[Alt text: The Translation tab, showing a translated phrase from English to Spanish, and a word highlighted in gray with different gender variations listed below.]

1. Go to the Translate app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next in the keyboard.

3. When available, do any of the following:

   - *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.

   - *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Translate.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap ⬇️ [Alt text: the Download button] next to the languages you want to download.

   - Turn On-Device Mode on.

Related

[Translate text in apps on iPhone](#)
[Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone](#)

Translate text in apps on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

On iPhone, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPhone, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Go to an app like Safari, Message, or Mail on your iPhone.

2. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

   If you don't see Translate, tap ＞ [Alt text: the Show More Items button] to see more options.

3. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

4. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:

   - *Replace with Translation:* Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).

- *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.

- *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.

- *Open in Translate:* Do more with the translation in the Translate app.

- *Download Languages:* Download languages for offline translation.

- *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap ▶ [Alt text: the Gray Play button] to listen to the original text.

- *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap ▶ [Alt text: the Blue Play button] to listen to the translated text.

Translate text in photos

On supported models, when you view a photo that includes text, tap 🔳 [Alt text: the Detect Text button] , touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap ❯ [Alt text: the Show More Items button] to see more options.

Translate text in the Camera app

On supported models, you can use the Camera app to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Go to the Camera app 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Position iPhone so that the text appears on the screen.

3. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap 🔳 [Alt text: the Detect Text button] .

4. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

   If you don't see Translate, tap ❯ [Alt text: the Show More Items button] to see more options.

Related

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone
Use Live Text with your iPhone camera
Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you

and the text in photos from your photo library.

On iPhone, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text using the camera view

1. Go to the Translate app 📱 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.

3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can translate text around you.

   Note: As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.

4. Tap ⭕ [Alt text: the Translate Camera button] to pause the view.

   You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.

5. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:

   • *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.

   • *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.

   • *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap ▶ [Alt text: the Gray Play button] to listen to the original text.

   • *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap ▶ [Alt text: the Blue Play button] to listen to the translated text.

6. When you're finished, tap ❌ [Alt text: the End button] .

Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Go to the Translate app 📱 [ALT N/A] on iPhone.

2. Tap Camera, then choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.

3. Tap 🖼 [Alt text: the Photo Library button] , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.

4. When you're finished, tap ❌ [Alt text: the End button] .

Share and save a translated image

1. Go to the Translate app 📱 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Camera, then do one of the following:

- *Use the camera view:* Tap ◯ [Alt text: the Translate Camera button] .

- *Use a photo from your photo library:* Tap ⌦ [Alt text: the Photo Library button] , then tap a photo.

3. Tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Share button] , then do any of the following:

- *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.

- *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.

Related

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone
Use Live Text with your iPhone camera
Translate text in apps on iPhone

TV

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Apple TV app on iPhone, subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels to access content on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and more.

In the Apple TV app, you can subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels. A subscription gives you access to content on demand on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices. You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple TV+

Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more —with new items added every month.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple TV+, then tap the subscription button.

3. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to MLS Season Pass

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.

3. Tap the subscription button.

4. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps

You can subscribe to Apple TV channels like Paramount+, Starz, and others to get the shows you want, without downloading any apps.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Store, then scroll down to the Add Channels & Apps row.

3. Swipe left to browse, then tap an item.

4. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Connected Apps, then tap the button next to the streaming app to disconnect it.

Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV

channels

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.

3. Tap Manage Subscriptions.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group, or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Related

P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Find shows, movies, and more

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In the Apple TV app on iPhone, browse through each tab to find TV shows, movies, and more.

You can use the Search tab in the Apple TV app to look for TV shows and movies by specific categories like title, sport, and cast. The Home tab gives you easy access to next episodes, new releases, personalized recommendations, and much more.

[Alt text: The Home tab showing a featured Apple Original in the center, above the Continue Watching row. At the bottom, from left to right, are the Home, Apple TV+, Store, Library, and Search tabs.]

Stream *Ted Lasso* on the Apple TV app with a subscription

Search for specific shows, movies, and more

When you're looking for something specific—like a show or actor—use the Search tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search, then either tap a category, or tap the search field to see previous searches or enter a new search.

   Tip: When you want to search, simply describe what you're looking for using natural language—for example, "Popular dramas with a twist."

Find content in the Home tab

When you're looking for suggestions or just want to see what's available, use the Home tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, then do any of the following:

   - *Get recommendations:* Get video previews of personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.

   - *Browse a collection:* Swipe left on the collection or tap ❯ [Alt text: the Forward button] to see all items.

   - *See shows, movies, and episodes sent by friends in Messages:* Scroll down to the Shared with You row. See Share content in Messages.

You can also tap the Apple TV+, Store, and Library tabs to see content specific to those categories.

Related

Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Personalize the Home tab

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Apple TV app on iPhone, browse titles from all your supported services in one place. Add titles to Continue Watching and discover Apple TV channels and apps to personalize the Home tab.

The Home tab brings your favorite shows, movies, channels, and sports together in one place. Pick up where you left off with Continue Watching, or discover Apple TV channels and streaming apps—personalized just for you.

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Pick up where you left off in the Continue Watching row

In iOS 18.1, the Continue Watching row displays content you've already started to watch or plan to watch. Shows and movies appear in the order you're most likely to want to watch them. For example, when a TV episode finishes, the next episode automatically appears in Continue Watching. When a live sports event for a team you follow is in progress, it appears first in the Continue Watching list if it's available to watch in the Apple TV app.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, swipe through the Continue Watching row, then tap an item.

   If the item is available for you to watch, it begins playing immediately.

Note: The Continue Watching row on the Home tab displays movies, TV shows, and live sports events from any app or channel you connected to the Apple TV app. For more information on connecting apps and channels, see Discover channels and apps.

Add or remove an item in your Watchlist

In iOS 18.1, you can add movies and TV shows that you want to save for later to your Watchlist.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add an item to your Watchlist:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Watchlist.

   - *Remove an item from your Watchlist:* Touch and hold the item in the Continue Watching or Watchlist row, then tap Remove from Watchlist.

   - *Resume watching on another device:* You can see your Watchlist in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, or supported smart TV where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Items added to your Watchlist appear in the Continue Watching row and the Watchlist row on the Home tab.

Discover channels and apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only).

1. Go to Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Channels & Apps row, then swipe right to browse either of the following:

   - *Channels & Apps:* Directly access all the channels you subscribe to or apps you connected to the Apple TV app.

   - *More to Explore:* Find new channels or apps to subscribe to or watch.

3. Tap an item to open it.

Your channels and apps appear in the Channels & Apps row in the Home tab across all your devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account.

Related

P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Buy, rent, or pre-order items

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to explore shows, movies, and sports. Browse titles from all your supported services in one place.

You can buy, rent, or pre-order TV shows and movies in the Apple TV app. Once you find something you want to watch, you can purchase it, rent it (if it's a movie), or choose how to watch it (if it's available on multiple channels and apps).

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Browse featured and recommended TV shows and movies

1. Go to the Apple TV app ⧉ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Store, then browse featured items, collections, and genres.

3. Tap an item to see previews, ratings, descriptions, and viewing information.

Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Go to the Apple TV app ⧉ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Store, then choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

   • *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.

- *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.

- *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.

3. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order.

You can find your purchases and rentals in your library and play them in the Apple TV app.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

Related

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Stream content and control playback

Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to stream shows, movies, and sports and download movies, TV show episodes, and full seasons of a TV show.

In the Apple TV app, you can stream TV shows, movies, sports, and more. You can also download movies and episodes of a TV show. In iOS 18.2 or later, you can download a full season of a TV show.

Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels plays in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app. Use the playback controls to play or pause what you're watching, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime.

Stream content

[Alt text: The Apple TV+ tab showing a featured Apple Original with the title, Play First Episode button, and a description of the series. At the bottom, from left to right, are the Home, Apple TV+, Store, Library, and Search tabs.]

Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap an item to see its details.

3. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

   - *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple Accounts) or Subscribe.

   - *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.

Download content
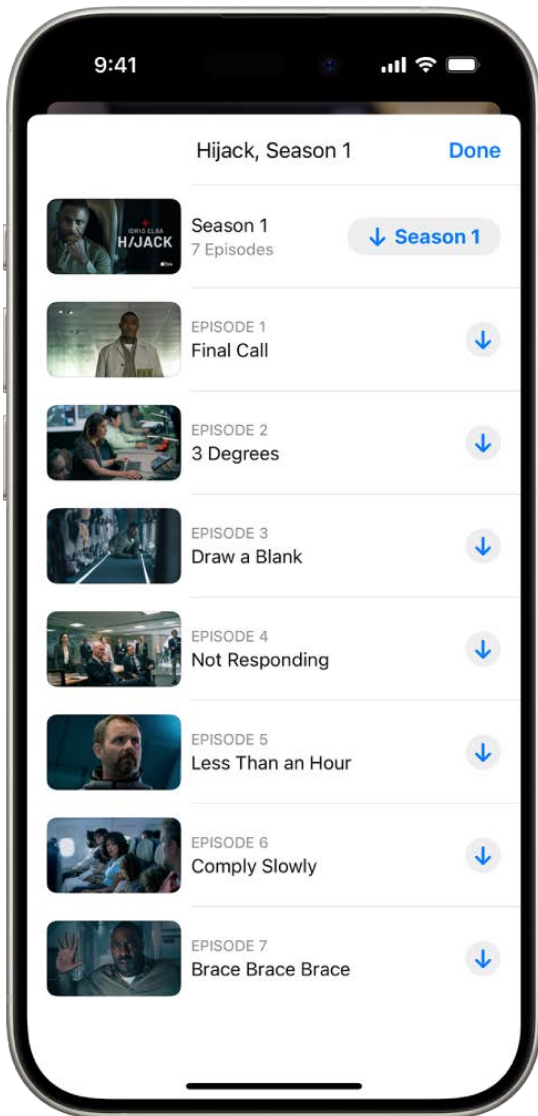
[Alt text: The Apple TV+ tab showing a list of episodes of an Apple Original. Buttons to download the entire season and each episode appear on the right side of the screen.]

Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription

In the Apple TV app, you can download movies and episodes of a TV show. In iOS 18.2 or later, you can download a full season of a TV show.

1. Go to the Apple TV app ⬛ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap an item to see its details.

3. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

   - *Download movies:* Tap ⬇ [Alt text: the Download button] .

   - *Download an episode of a TV show:* Tap ⬇ [Alt text: the Download button] , tap a season, then tap ⬇ [Alt text: the Download button] next to the episode you want to download.

- *Download a full season of a TV show:* Tap ⬇ [Alt text: the Download button] , tap a season, then tap the season button at the top of the screen.

You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Watch a movie you rented

1. Go to the Apple TV app ⬛ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library, tap Rentals, then tap a movie.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Play the movie:* Tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] . The time remaining in the rental period is shown.

   - *Download the movie:* Tap ⬇ [Alt text: the Download button] to watch the item later when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.

- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies // Hijack cleared until fall 2025 (evergreen title) (M. E. Mason, L. O'Rourke, Crystal, 2024-07-08) //
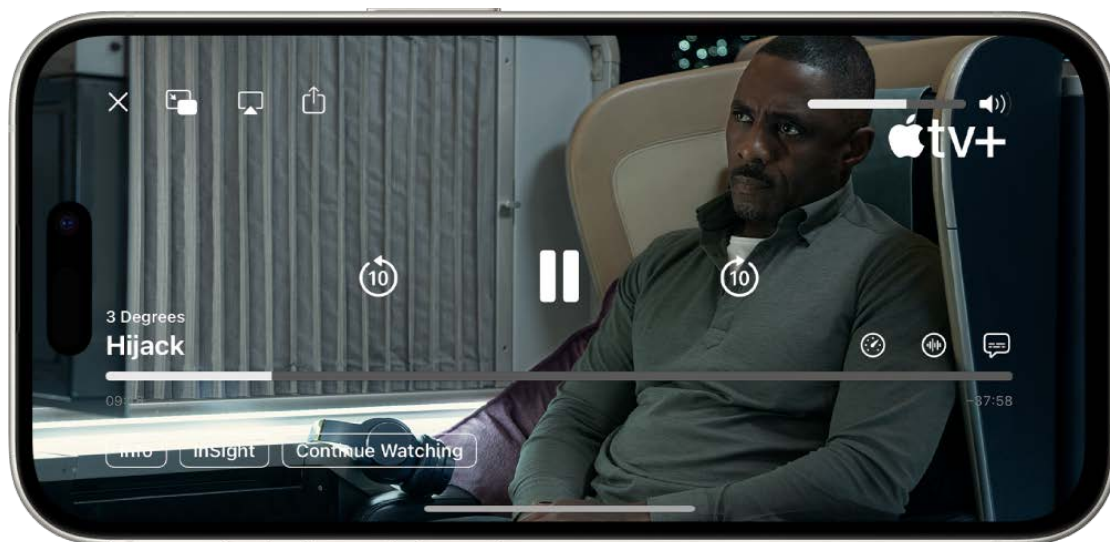
[Alt text: A TV show playing, with controls visible. The Close, Picture in Picture, AirPlay, and Share buttons are at the top left. The volume slider is at the top right. At the center are buttons to skip 10 seconds backward, pause, and skip 10 seconds forward. Across the bottom center is a slider that you can drag to adjust the video position; the elapsed time and time remaining appear on either side of the slider. At the bottom right are the Info, InSight, and Continue Watching buttons.]

Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Control	Description

[Alt text: The Play button]	Play
[Alt text: The Pause button]	Pause
[Alt text: The Skip 10 Seconds Backwards button]	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
[Alt text: The Skip 10 Seconds Forward button]	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
[Alt text: The Playback Speed button]	Change the playback speed
[Alt text: The Audio button]	Change the audio track and enhance dialogue
[Alt text: The Subtitles button]	Display subtitles and closed captions
[Alt text: The Share button]	Share an episode, movie, trailer, or sporting event
[Alt text: The AirPlay button]	Stream the video to other devices
[Alt text: The Picture in Picture button]	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
[Alt text: The Close button]	Stop playback

When the audio is muted, subtitles automatically appear. And if you skip backward 10 seconds, subtitles appear. To turn off subtitles, tap 🗨 [Alt text: the Subtitles button] , then tap Off.

Change audio options during playback

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.

2. Tap 🎵 [Alt text: the Audio button] , then tap Enhance Dialogue.

3. Tap one of the following:

   - *Enhance More:* Makes dialogue very prominent in the mix.

   - *Enhance:* Makes dialogue more prominent in the mix.

   - *Off:* Turns Enhance Dialogue off.

Get information about shows, characters, actors, and music

During playback, you can get more information about the movie or TV show you're watching or go directly to Continue Watching.

With InSight, you can get information in real time about actors, characters, and music currently onscreen while you're watching an Apple TV+ movie or TV show (Apple TV+ subscription required). You can tap an actor to view their background and filmography page, or quickly view a song that's playing in the background and add it to an Apple Music playlist (Apple Music subscription required).

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.

2. Tap any of the following options:

   - *Info:* See more information about what you're watching.

   - *InSight:* Tap an actor or character to see more info. If music information appears, tap the song to add it to a playlist in the Music app 🎵 [ALT N/A] (Apple TV+ and Apple Music subscriptions required).

   - *Continue Watching:* Go directly to Continue Watching, then tap an item to start watching it.

   - *Live Sports:* View live and upcoming sports events.

Related

P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

P9

Watch sports

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to browse by sport or league, watch games, follow your favorite teams with My Sports, and get live scores and notifications for close games.

The Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events (not available in all countries or regions).

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, or browse upcoming games.

Explore sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app ![tv] [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Sports row.

3. Do any of the following:

   - Browse live and upcoming games.

   - Tap Live Sports, then scroll down to browse football, baseball, basketball, and more.

4. To filter by sport, tap Live Sports, scroll down to the Browse row, then tap a sport.

Watch a live game

1. Go to the Apple TV app ![tv] [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, then scroll down to the Sports row.

3. Tap Live Sports, then tap a live game.

4. Tap Watch or Open In, then choose an app.

   You can also scroll down to How to Watch, then choose an app.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen.

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings ![settings] [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Related

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Apple TV app on iPhone, follow your favorite teams with My Sports.

You can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Continue Watching and receive notifications when they're about to play.

When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News, Apple Sports, and other supported apps. If you already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac signed in to the same Apple Account, you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

Note: My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

Follow your favorite teams

1. Go to the Apple TV app ⬛ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Sports row, then tap Live Sports.

3. Tap Follow Your Teams.

4. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.

5. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap ➕ [Alt text: the Follow button] next to a team to follow it.

6. When you're finished, tap Done.

Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you set up My Sports.

1. Go to the Apple TV app ⬛ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, scroll down to the Sports row, then tap Live Sports.

3. Tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

- *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap ➕ [Alt text: the Follow button] next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.

- *Unfollow teams:* Tap ➖ [Alt text: the Unfollow button] next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Remove, then tap Done.

Related

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Use the Apple TV app on iPhone to watch Major League Soccer (MLS) with MLS Season Pass. Explore live and upcoming matches, follow your favorite MLS clubs, watch match highlights, and more.

MLS in the Apple TV app gives you access to Major League Soccer events when you subscribe to MLS Season Pass.

You can also follow your favorite MLS clubs using My Sports (not available in all countries or regions), catch up on key plays during a live game, and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last season, and more.

Note: Some MLS games may be offered for free on a promotional basis, but full access to all games, shows, and features requires an MLS Season Pass subscription. MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

Browse and watch with MLS Season Pass

1. Go to the Apple TV app 📺 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Explore featured matches, pregame and postgame shows, and more:* Scroll to a category row.

   - *Browse matches, club profiles, player profiles, and more for a particular club:* Scroll down to the All Clubs row, then tap a club.

4. To start watching, tap an event or show.

Follow your favorite MLS clubs

1. Go to the Apple TV app ![tv] [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.

3. Scroll down to the All Clubs row, tap a club, then tap ⭐ [Alt text: the Favorite button] at the top right.

   Tip: You can also touch and hold a club in the All Clubs row, then tap Follow Team.

Clubs you follow appear at the front of the All Clubs row with a star ⭐ [ALT N/A] next to the club's name.

You can also follow MLS clubs with My Sports. See Follow teams with My Sports.

Note: When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Continue Watching.

Catch up with Key Plays

When you start watching a live match in progress, you can catch up to the action by watching all the key plays you missed. You can also browse and watch key plays at any time during the match.

1. Go to the Apple TV app ![tv] [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search, then tap MLS Season Pass.

3. Do either of the following:

   - *Catch up to a match in progress:* Tap a match, then tap Catch Up.

   - *Go to key plays during a match:* While watching a match, tap the screen to show the playback controls, tap Key Plays, then select a key play from the collection row.

     Key plays start playing in order from the beginning of the match if you're catching up, or from the key play you select from the Key Play menu.

4. While watching key plays, you can do either of the following:

   - *Browse the collection:* Swipe left or right.

   - *Return to the match:* Tap Jump to Live in the lower-left corner of the screen, or to resume playback from the last spot you were watching, tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] .

Related

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Manage your library

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: See your purchases, rentals, and downloads in the Apple TV app on iPhone. If you download a movie or TV show, you can watch it when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

Your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you use Family Sharing, you can also view purchases made by family members.

Browse your library

1. Go to the Apple TV app 📺 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library, then tap TV Shows, Movies, or Genres.

Share purchases made by family members

If you use Family Sharing, you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

Remove a downloaded item

1. Go to the Apple TV app 📺 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.

3. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

Related

P9 Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPhone

P9 Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Add your TV provider

Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: With the Apple TV app on iPhone, watch content from and cable and satellite providers.

You can add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app and watch shows and movies on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > TV Provider.

2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

Related

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPhone

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change the settings

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Change streaming and download options for the Apple TV app on iPhone.

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations and choose what appears in the Apple TV app, including live sports scores and items in Continue Watching.

Change streaming and download options

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV.

2. Choose streaming options:

   - *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.

   - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.

3. Choose download options:

- *Use Cellular Data:* Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.

- *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

  High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.

- *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

  The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

Change how your viewing history is used

By default, what you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Watchlist on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] , tap Home, tap your picture or initials at the top right, then tap Clear Play History.

- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV, then turn off Use Play History.

Change autoplay settings

By default, when you finish watching an episode of a TV show, the next episode automatically plays. And when you finish a series, movie, or sporting event, recommended content automatically plays. You can change these settings.

1. Go to the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Home, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Automatically play the next episode:* Turn Play Next Episode on or off.

- *Automatically play content recommended for you after you finish a series, movie, or sporting event:* Turn Play a Recommendation on or off.

Change your device preferences

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > TV.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Show or hide live sports scores:* Turn off Show Sports Scores.

- *Use your viewing history for personalized recommendations and Continue Watching:* Turn on Use Play History.

- *Choose the art you want to see in Continue Watching:* Tap Continue Watching Display, then tap Still Frame to see paused images from what you're watching, or Poster Art to show main title images for shows or movies.

Voice Memos

NAV TITLE: [Make a recording](#)

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Voice Memos, use iPhone as a portable recording device.

You can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can also fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recordings [appear and update automatically](#) on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).
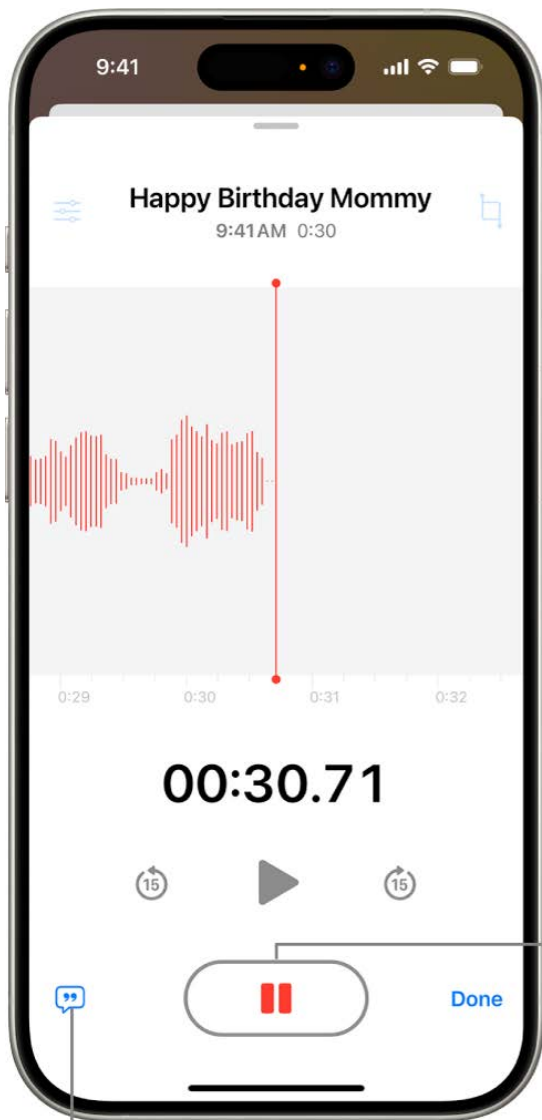
Pause the recording.

View the transcription.

[Alt text: A Voice Memos recording, showing a waveform of the recording that's in progress, along with a time indicator and a button to pause the recording.]

Make a basic recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

   Note: To make it easier to find and open the Voice Memos app, you can move it from the Utilities folder to the Home Screen.

2. Tap ⏺ [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

3. Tap ⏹ [Alt text: the Stop Recording Video button] to stop recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit or delete a recording.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

Record in stereo

You can record in stereo in Voice Memos.

1. Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Voice Memos.

2. Turn on Stereo Recording.

   When Stereo Recording is on, Voice Memos records using multiple microphones on your iPhone and with right and left audio channels. If you listen to the recording through headphones, you hear different sounds from different microphones; however, the waveform display still looks the same.

   Note: Stereo recording isn't available on all devices.

Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙️ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔴 [Alt text: the Record button] to begin a recording.

   To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

   To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

3. Tap ❚❚ [Alt text: the Pause button] to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.

4. To review your recording, tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] .

   To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] .

5. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new name.

To fine-tune your recording, see Edit or delete a recording.

Mute the start and stop tones

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙️ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔴 [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.

3. While recording, use the iPhone volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app as long as it doesn't play audio on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙️ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔴 [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.

3. While you're recording, go to the Home Screen, then open another app.

   If the other app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

   On supported models, you can see your recording in progress in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen and in other apps. Tap the Dynamic Island to expand it, or navigate back to Voice Memos. See Use the Dynamic Island.

A Voice Memo
recording in progress

[Alt text: The iPhone Home Screen, showing a Voice Memos recording in the Dynamic Island.]

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See Keep recordings up to date.

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, unless you turn on Stereo Recording in Settings. You can also use an external stereo microphone that works with iPhone to record stereo. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPhone" or "Works with iPhone" logo.

Related

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone

View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, view a transcription of an audio recording.

In iOS 18.0 or later, speech in your audio recordings can be transcribed to text in Voice Memos. You can view the transcription while you're recording or after.

Note: Audio transcription is available on iPhone 12 and later in all variants of English. not available in all countries or regions

If you open a recording made in an earlier version of Voice Memos (iOS 17 or earlier), Voice Memos will transcribe it automatically if it includes recorded speech.

View a transcription while recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔴 [Alt text: the Record button] to begin recording.

3. Swipe up from the top of the waveform, then tap 💬 [Alt text: the Transcription button] to watch the transcription live.

   The waveform disappears temporarily, and the transcription appears, with the current word highlighted. To return to the waveform view, tap 💬 [Alt text: the Selected Transcription button] .

4. Tap ⏸ [Alt text: the Pause button] to pause recording; tap Resume to continue.

5. To save the recording, tap Done.

View or copy transcribed text after recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the recording with the transcript you want to view.

3. Tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then do one of the following:

   - *Copy part of the transcript:* Choose View Transcript, select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.

   - *Copy the entire transcript:* Choose Copy Transcript.

   You can open another document—a Mail message or text file, for example—and paste the text into it.

With Apple Intelligence, you can use Writing Tools to summarize transcripts with a tap, proofread your work, and find just the right wording and tone. See Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence.

Search for text in titles and transcriptions

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙️ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Swipe down from the top of the list of recordings to show the search field.

3. In the search field, enter the text you want to find.

   The list shows only recordings with that text—either in the title or in the audio transcription.

When you select a term in the transcription, the playhead appears at that location in the audio waveform. To return to the waveform, tap 💬 [Alt text: the Selected Transcription button] .

Related

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Play it back

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, play back a recording.

You can play audio you recorded on your iPhone using the playback controls.

You can also adjust settings to change playback speed, reduce background noise, and fill in silences.

Note: Changing these settings doesn't affect the recording itself. The setting you choose for a recording stays with that specific recording and is applied each time you play the recording. It doesn't apply to other recordings, and isn't included with the recording when you share it.
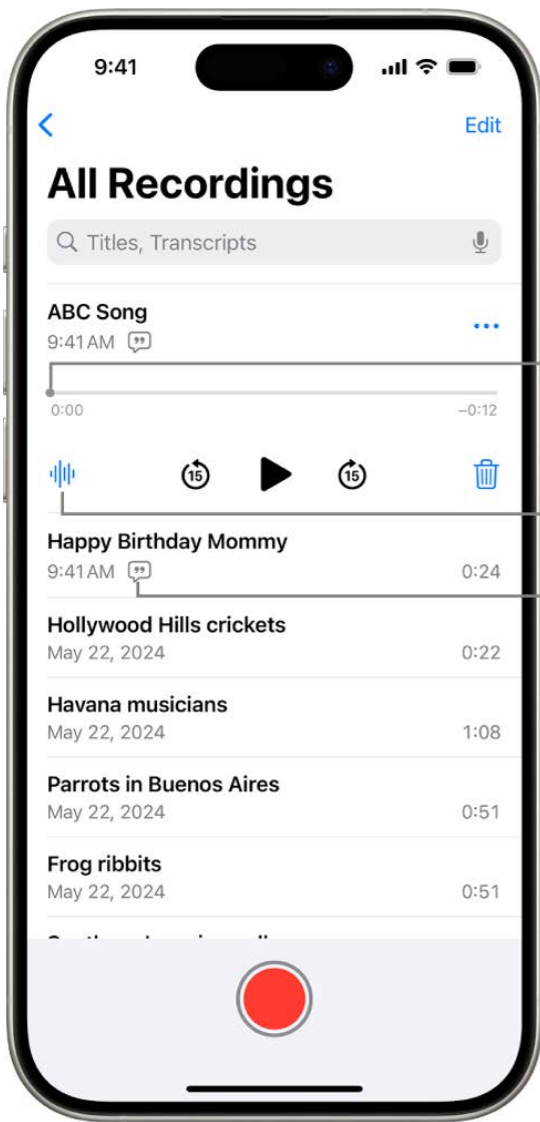
Drag to go to a specific place in the recording.

Go to the waveform.

Has a transcription

[Alt text: The Voice Memos list screen with a selected recording at the top. The recording timeline has a playhead, which you can drag to go to a specific place in the recording. The play controls are below the timeline.]

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Control	Description
 [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play
 [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause
 [Alt text: The Rewind Fifteen Seconds button.]	Skip backward 15 seconds
 [Alt text: The Fast Forward Fifteen Seconds button.]	Skip forward 15 seconds

Tip: While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] .

3. Tap [Alt text: the Playback Settings button] , then drag the slider toward the tortoise [ALT N/A] for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit [ALT N/A] for a faster speed.

4. Tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] , then tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] to play the recording.

Enhance a recording

You can turn on Enhance Recording to reduce background noise and echo when you play the recording.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] .

3. Tap Options, then turn on Enhance Recording.

4. Tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] , then tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] to play the recording.

Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the recording you want to play, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] .

3. Tap Options, then turn on Skip Silence.

4. Tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] , then tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] to play the recording.

Reset the playback options

You can return all the playback options for a recording to their original settings at the same time.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the recording you want to turn off playback options for, then tap ••• [Alt text: the Options button] .

3. Tap Options, then tap Reset.

Add a second layer to a Voice Memos recording on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In iOS 18.2 or later on iPhone 16 Pro and iPhone 16 Pro Max, you can record and add a second layer to a recording in Voice Memos.

On iPhone 16 Pro and iPhone 16 Pro Max, you can record a vocal layer on top of an instrumental recording without using headphones (iOS 18.2 or later). This allows you to capture a musical inspiration—add vocals or a voiceover to an existing instrumental recording, try out lyrics, harmonize with instrumental music, and more.

Add a second layer

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🟥 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to add a vocal layer to, then tap ▮▮▮ [Alt text: the Edit Recording button] to view the waveform.

3. Tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add a Vocal Layer button] .
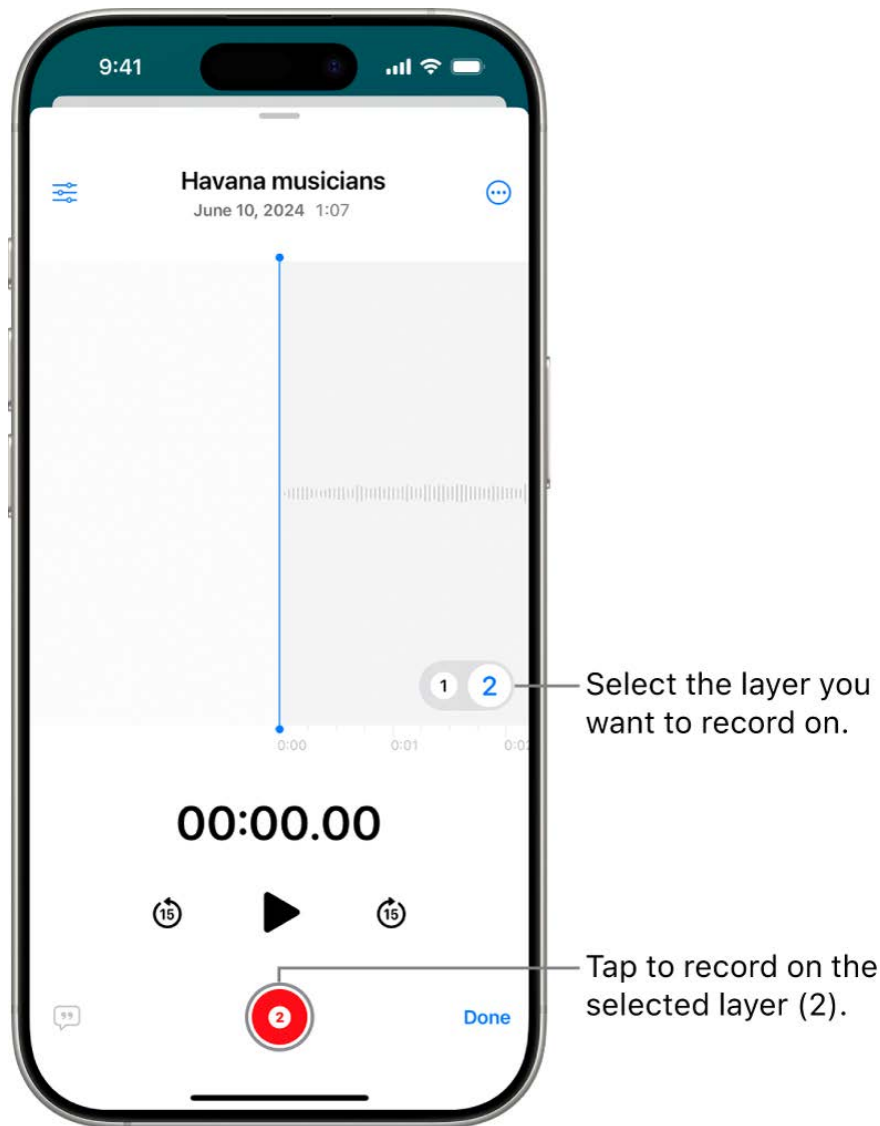
[Alt text: The screen for recording a second layer in Voice Memos.]

4. Tap ⊙ [Alt text: the Record button] , then record your second layer.

    In the list of recordings, layered recordings are indicated by ⬙ [Alt text: the Layers button] .

Although you can only create a layered recording on an iPhone 16 Pro or an iPhone 16 Pro Max, you can play a layered recording on any device with iOS 18.2, iPadOS 18.2, macOS Sequoia 15.2, or later.

Layered recordings are in QTA (QuickTime Audio) format. They won't appear on devices with iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, macOS Sequoia 15.1, or earlier. However, when you separate the layers, each layer is in .m4a format and *will* appear on devices with iOS 18.1, iPadOS 18.1, macOS Sequoia 15.1, or earlier.

Note: Only the first layer can be transcribed or recorded in stereo. (See View a Voice Memos transcription on iPhone for the hardware, software, and languages that support transcription.) You can edit both layers of a layered recording together, unless you separate them.

Mix the layers

After recording the second layer, you can mix the two layers.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app ▣ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the layered recording you want to mix.

3. Tap ⣿ [Alt text: the Edit Recording button] to view the waveform, then tap ⬖ [Alt text: the Playback Settings button].

4. Drag the Layer Mix slider to mix the layers.

Separate the layers

After recording the second layer, you can separate the two layers to edit or play them separately.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app ▣ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. While viewing the waveform, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap Separate Layers.

3. Tap Done to return to the list of recordings.

   The two layers appear as separate recordings in the list. You can select them, edit them, and play them separately.

Related

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Export a recording to Files

Export a Voice Memos recording to Files on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: You can export a Voice Memos recording to the Files app on your iPhone.

Any recording can be exported from Voice Memos to the Files app on your iPhone. Layered recordings are in QTA (QuickTime Audio) format. One-layer recordings are in .m4a format.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app ▣ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the recording you want to export, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Share button] .

3. Scroll down, tap Save to Files, navigate to the location where you want to save the recording, then tap Save.

Related

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, use the editing tools—including trim, insert, and resume—to fine-tune your recording.

You can fine-tune your recordings using the editing tools. Remove parts, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

Edit a voice recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap Edit Recording.

3. Tap ⬓ [Alt text: the Trim button] at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

    You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.

[Alt text: A recording being edited, with the yellow trim handles enclosing a portion of the audio waveform at the bottom of the screen. A Play button and a recording timer appear below the waveform. The trim handles are below the Play button. On either side of the Play button are the Trim button (for deleting the part of the recording outside the handles) and the Delete button (for deleting the part of the recording inside the handles).]

To check your selection, tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] .

4. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.

5. Tap Apply, then tap Done.

6. Tap Save Recording to overwrite the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the edited version as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

Replace a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app ▉ [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap Edit Recording.

3. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

   You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.

4. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).

   Tap ▮▮ [Alt text: the Pause button] to pause; tap Resume to continue.

5. To check your recording, tap ▶ [Alt text: the Play button] .

6. Tap Done, then tap Save Recording to replace the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the changes as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

Delete a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap 🗑 [Alt text: the Delete button] .

   - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap 🗑 [Alt text: the Delete button] .

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.

   If you don't see the Recently Deleted folder, tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.

   - *Delete the selected recording:* Tap Delete.

   - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.

   - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

Related

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, keep your recordings up to date on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can keep your audio recordings up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS:* Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud > See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.

- *macOS Sequoia:* Choose Apple menu [ALT N/A] > System Settings, then click your name in the sidebar. If you don't see your name, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or create one. Click iCloud, click See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.

Related

Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, mark recordings as favorites and organize recordings into folders.

You can mark audio recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders, which automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, do any of the following:

- Tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap ♡ [Alt text: the Favorite button] .

- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Share button] , tap Move to Folder, then tap Favorites. (If there isn't a Favorites folder, create one by entering Favorites in the field.)

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.

3. Select one or more recordings, tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Share button] , tap Move to Folder, then choose a folder.

   To create a new folder, tap 🗁⊕ [Alt text: the New Folder button] , type a name for the folder, then tap Save.

To view your folders, tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] ; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] to go to the list of folders.

3. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:

- *Delete a folder:* Tap ⛔ [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the folder, then tap 🗑 [Alt text: the Trash button] .

- *Change the order of the folders:* Drag ☰ [Alt text: the Reorder button] next to any folder.

4. Tap Done.

Related

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Search for or rename a recording

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, you can search for and rename a recording.

You can search for recordings or rename any recording.

Search for a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Swipe down from the middle of the list of recordings to reveal the search field.

3. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

Note: You can also search for a word or phrase in a transcript by entering it in this field.

Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if Location Services is turned on in Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. You can change the name.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🎙 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

Related

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, share a recording with another device via AirDrop, Messages, Mail, and more.

You can share one or more audio recordings with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

Share a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to share, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] .

3. Tap Share, choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or ⬆️ [Alt text: the Send button] .

Share more than one recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.

3. Tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Share button] , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Send button] or Done.

Related

[Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Voice Memos on iPhone, duplicate a recording.

You can duplicate a recording if you need another copy of it. You can also make changes to the copy, save it, and [give it a new name](#).

1. Go to the Voice Memos app 🔴 [ALT N/A] (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

2. In the list of recordings, tap a recording, tap ••• [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then tap Duplicate.

The duplicate appears right below the original version in the list and has "copy" added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

Related

[Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone](#)

Wallet

About Apple Wallet on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use Wallet to keep cards and passes in one place for easy access.

Use the Wallet app ▢ [ALT N/A] to securely keep your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay, driver's license or state ID, transit cards, event tickets, keys, and more—in one convenient place for easy access.
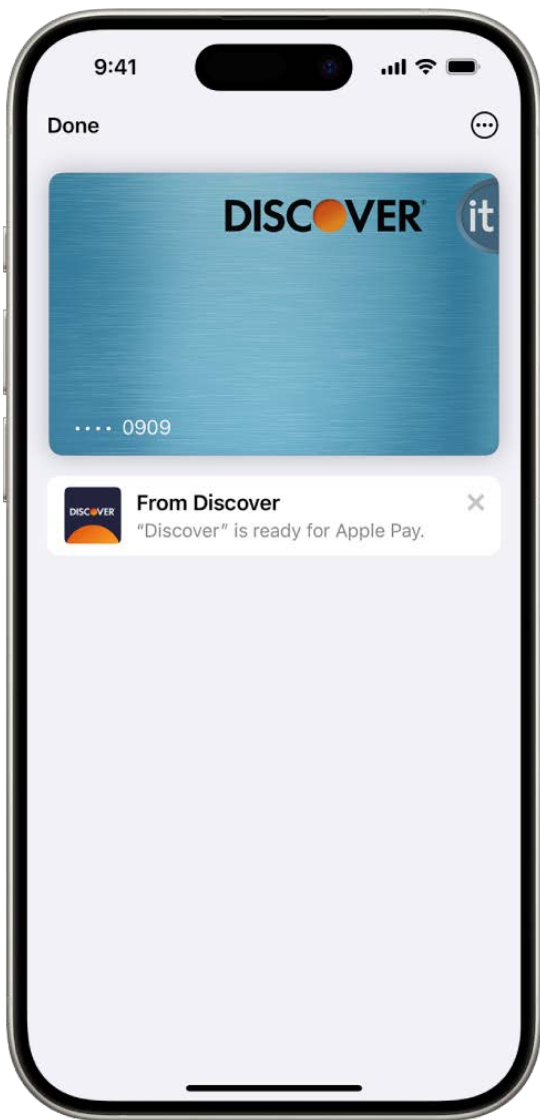
[Alt text: Apple Card in Wallet, showing the More button at the top right. Below the card image are the card balance, weekly activity, and the payment button. The Savings Account current balance and latest card transactions are at the bottom.]

Payment cards for Apple Pay

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Discover Card; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- Credit and debit cards

- P9

  Apple Cash (U.S. only)

- P9

  Apple Card (U.S. only)
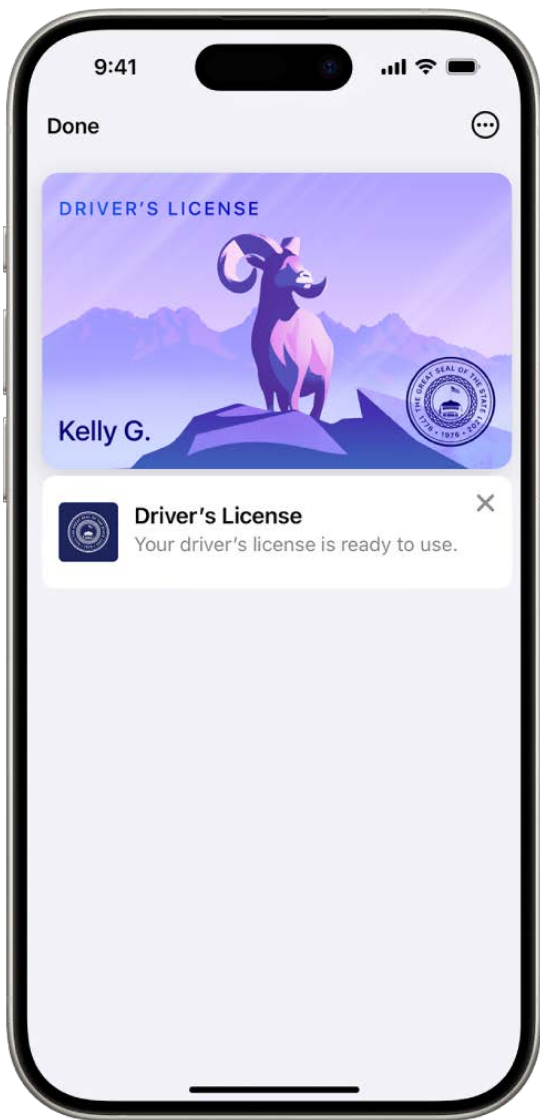
[Alt text: A transit card in the Wallet app, showing the balance in the account and the Add Money button.]

Identity cards

- Driver's license or state ID

- Employee badge

- Student ID card
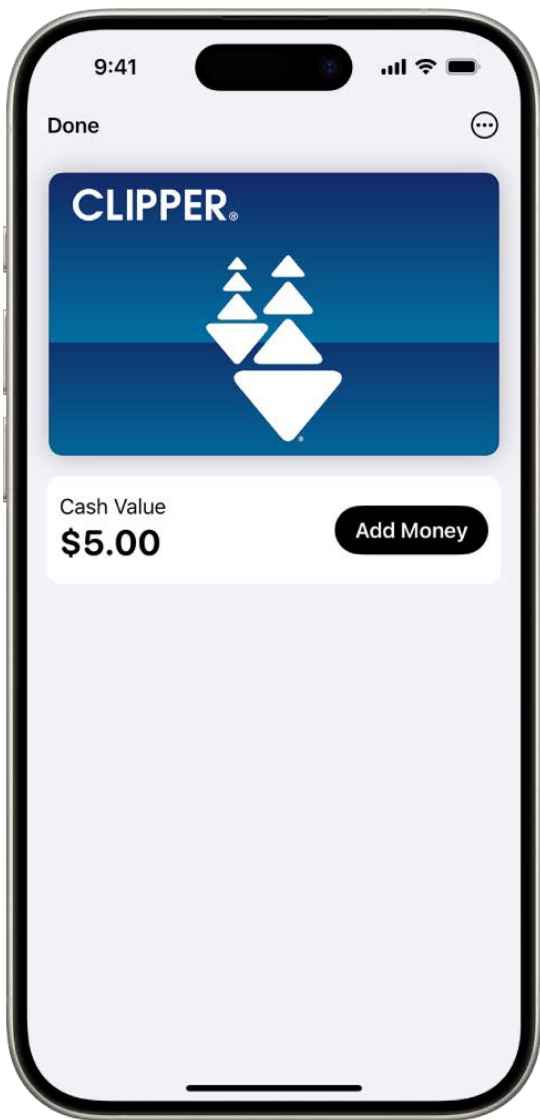
[Alt text: A transit card in the Wallet app, showing the balance in the account and the Add Money button.]

Transit and tickets

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Clipper; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- Transit cards
- Boarding passes and tickets
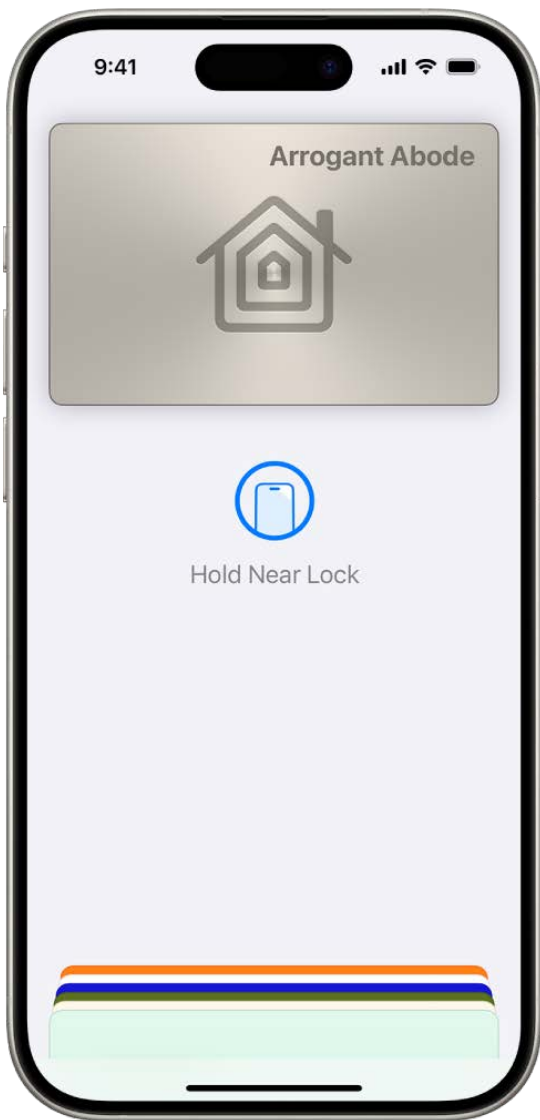
[Alt text: A transit card in the Wallet app, showing the balance in the account and the Add Money button.]

Keys

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - home key; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]

- Home keys
- Resident keys
- Hotel keys
- Car keys
- Scooter keys

[Alt text: A boarding pass in the Wallet app, showing the flight information and a QR code.]

And more

- Passes, coupons, reward cards, and loyalty cards

- Verifiable COVID-19 vaccination cards

- Apple Account

NAV TITLE: Set up Apple Pay

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Add your debit, credit, or prepaid cards to Wallet on iPhone, then use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites.

Using Apple Pay can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. With your cards stored in the Wallet app, you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites that support Apple Pay.

Note: The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.

To set up Apple Pay, add your debit, credit, and prepaid cards to Wallet.

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Discover Card; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]
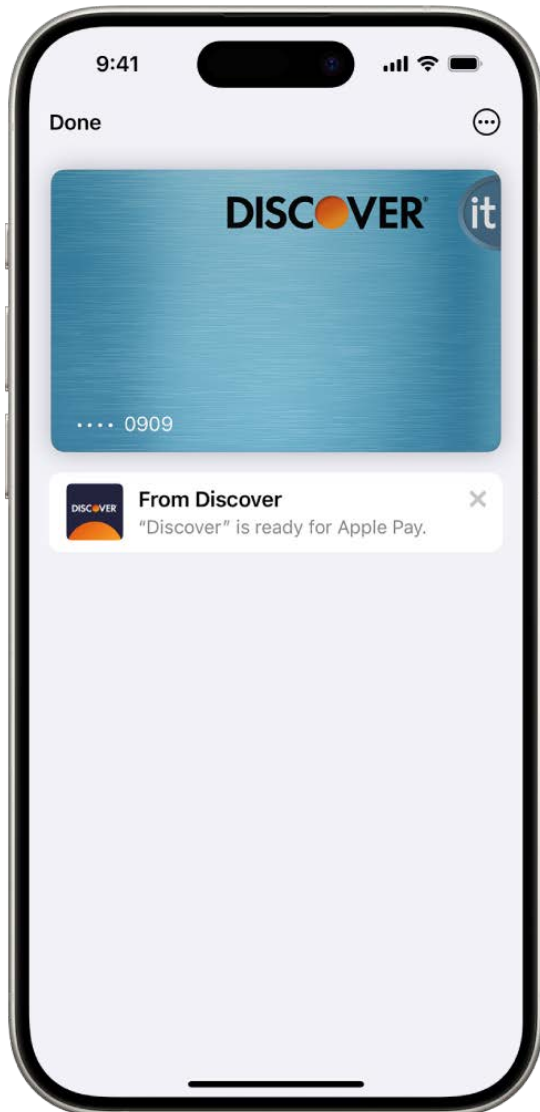
[Alt text: The Wallet screen, showing a credit card.]

(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Add a debit or credit card

You can add a supported card from a participating card issuer. To check if your card is compatible with Apple Pay, contact the card issuer.

1. Go to the Wallet app 🔲 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add Card button] . You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.

3. Add any of the following types of cards:

   - *A new card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then hold iPhone near the chip on the card. If the card doesn't have a chip, tap Enter Card Details Manually, then enter the card number or tap Scan Card with Camera.

   - P9

     Apple Card: See Use Apple Card on iPhone.

   - *Your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple Account, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, cards you added to Safari AutoFill, or cards you removed from Wallet. Tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - *A card from a supported app:* Below "From Apps on Your iPhone", tap the app of your bank or card issuer.

4. Verify your information with your bank or card issuer. They may ask you to provide more information or to download an app before approving your card for use with Apple Pay.

Tip: If you have a paired Apple Watch, you have the option to also add the card to your watch.

See the Apple Support article If you can't add a card to Apple Wallet to use with Apple Pay.

Set the default card for payments

The first debit or credit card you add to Wallet becomes the default card. To choose a different card, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app ▢ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold the card you want to set as the default, then drag it to the front of the stack.

Connect your account to Wallet

With participating card issuers, you can connect your account to Wallet. When your account is connected, you can see your account balance, full transaction history, and more in Wallet.

1. Go to the Wallet app ▢ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the card you want to connect.

3. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions to connect your account.

   If you don't see Get Started below the card, the card issuer doesn't support this feature. See the Apple Support article View your account balance and full transaction history in the Wallet app.

View and manage card details

P9

If you have Apple Card, see Use Apple Card on iPhone. For other cards, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app 🟧 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the card.

   Note: The latest transactions may appear, showing authorized amounts that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of $99, even though you pumped only $25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.

3. Tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] , then tap any of the following:

   - *Card Number:* View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number— the number transmitted to the merchant.

   - *Card Details:* See more information; change the billing address; turn the transaction history on or off; or remove the card from Wallet.

   - *Notifications:* Turn notifications on or off.

Related

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

P9 Use Apple Cash in Wallet on iPhone

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Add or update the payment method associated with your Apple Account

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Store your cards in Wallet on iPhone and use Apple Pay for contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.

With your payment cards stored in the Wallet app on iPhone, you can use Apple Pay for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.
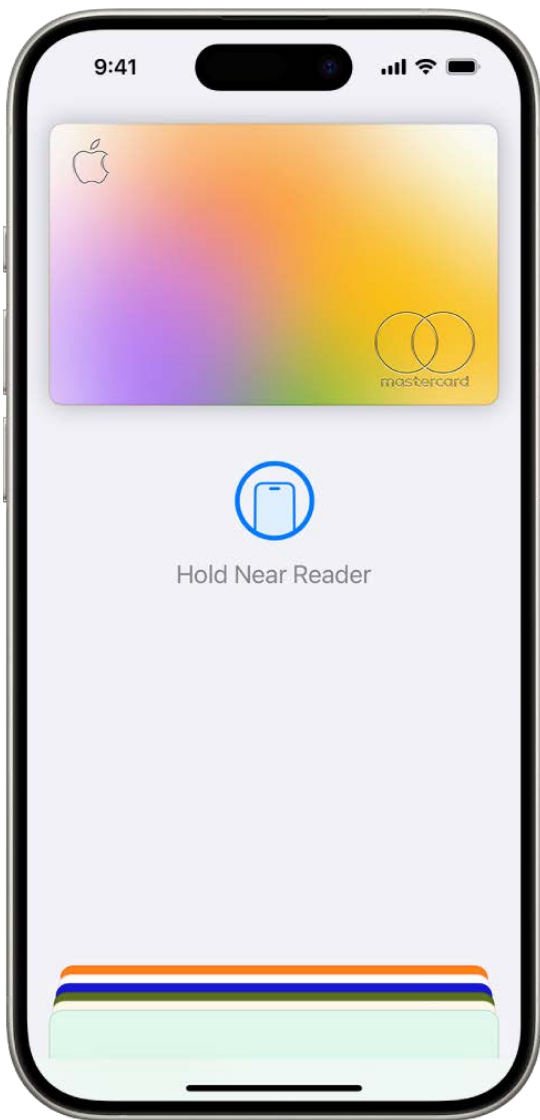
[Alt text: A credit card on the Wallet screen. Below the card is "Hold Near Reader."]

Note: Apple Pay is available in certain countries and regions; see Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.

Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay where you see contactless payment symbols such as the following:
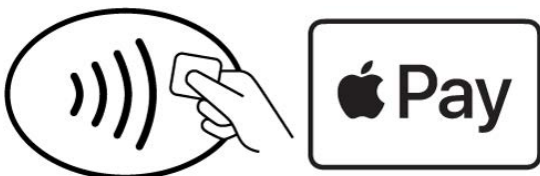
[Alt text: Symbols on contactless readers.]

Note: In addition to accepting Apple Pay, the merchant must accept your payment card and payment network.

In other countries and regions, you may see different contactless payment symbols. See Learn where to use Apple Pay.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.

2. When your default card appears, authenticate with Face ID or your passcode.

3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID

1. Rest your finger on Touch ID.

2. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Pay with a different card instead of your default card

1. When your default card appears, tap it, then choose another card.

2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

3. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Use a loyalty or rewards card and Apple Pay

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you use Apple Pay.

1. Add your rewards card to the Wallet app.

2. To have your rewards card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] on the card, tap Pass Details, then turn on Automatic Selection.

3. At the payment terminal in the store, present your rewards card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

   Apple Pay then switches to your default payment card to pay for the purchase. In some stores, you can apply your rewards card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See Control the location information you share.

Related

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone
Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Make Apple Pay purchases on iPhone in apps, App Clips, and on the web using Safari wherever you see the Apple Pay button.

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web wherever you see the Apple Pay button. (Available in certain countries and regions; see Countries and regions that support Apple Pay.)

- COMMENT - #ba #wallet - Warby Parker screen; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]
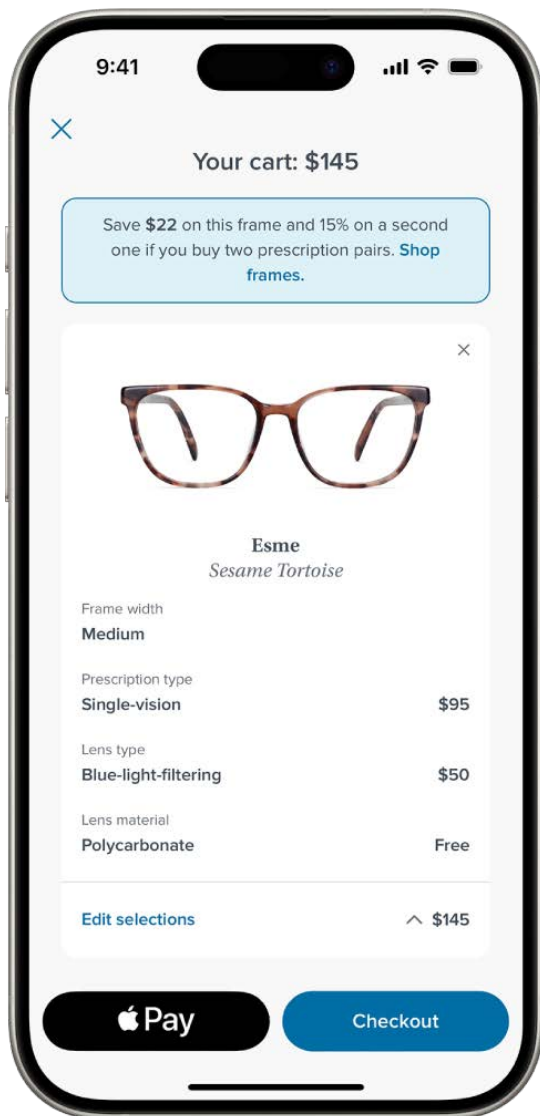
[Alt text: The shopping cart of an app showing the prices of selected items. The Apple Pay button is at the bottom left.]

Pay in an app, an App Clip, or Safari

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.

2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:

   - Payment method

     You can choose a different payment card; if available, you can also pay with rewards or installments (available on cards from participating banks and card providers in certain markets; subject to eligibility and approval).

   - Billing and shipping addresses

   - Contact information

     Tip: If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use Hide My Email to keep your real email address private.

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

See the Apple Support articles Pay with rewards using Apple Pay and Pay with installments using Apple Pay.

Use Apple Pay in third-party browsers on Mac, Window devices, and other devices

When you shop in a supported third-party web browser, you can complete the purchase with Apple Pay using the payment information on your iPhone. (Not available in all countries or regions.)

1. At checkout, click Apple Pay, then scan the code using your iPhone camera.

2. On your iPhone, review the payment information and set any of the following:

   - Payment method

   - Billing and shipping addresses

   - Contact information

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

Related

Use Apple Pay for contactless payments on iPhone
Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone
Apple Support article: Track orders and purchases in Apple Wallet

P9 NAV TITLE: Apple Cash

Use Apple Cash in Wallet on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Apple Cash on iPhone, make purchases using Apple Pay or the virtual card number, send and receive money, transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.

With Apple Cash (available in the U.S.), you can send and receive money, get cash back from Apple Card transactions, make purchases, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.
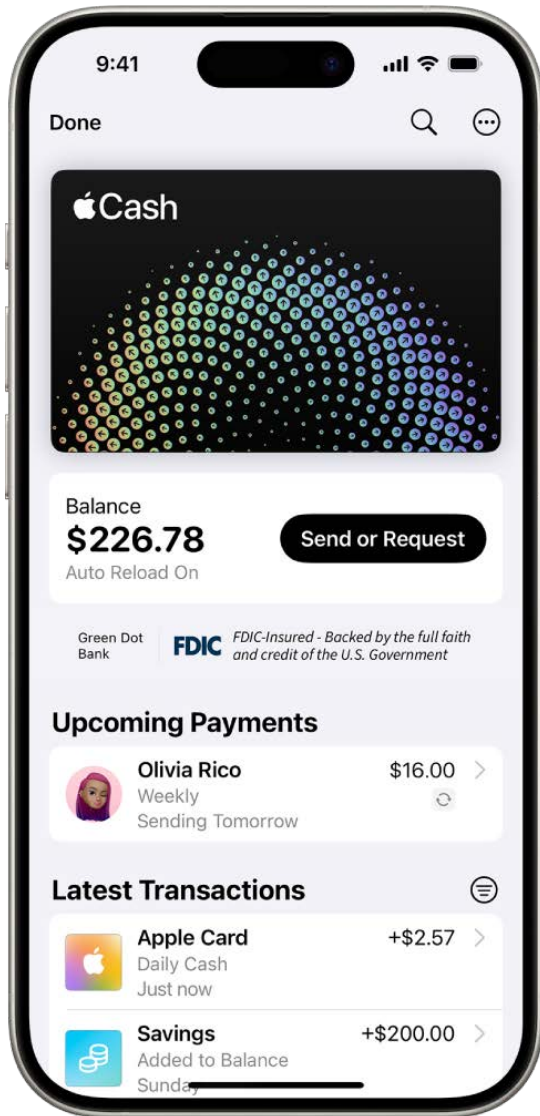
[Alt text: The Apple Cash card in Wallet, showing the More button at the top right, the current balance and the Send or Request button in the middle, and the latest transactions at the bottom.]

Set up Apple Cash

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Set up Apple Cash.

Make purchases with Apple Cash

You can make purchases with Apple Cash using Apple Pay or the virtual card number:

- *At payment terminals:* At locations that accept Visa, you can use Apple Pay for contactless payments.

- *In apps or on the web:* Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web.

- *With the virtual card number:* Go to the Wallet app 🟧 [ALT N/A] , tap the Apple Cash card, tap 🔘 [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Card Number.

  See the Apple Support article Use your virtual card number for Apple Cash.

Send and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages

You can start a person-to-person payment in the following ways:

- *In Wallet:* Go to the Wallet app 🟧 [ALT N/A] , tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then follow the prompts.

- *In Messages:* Go to the Messages app 🟢 [ALT N/A] , start a new message or tap an existing conversation, tap ➕ [Alt text: the Apps button] , tap Apple Cash, then follow the prompts.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Send and receive money with Apple Cash.

Send Apple Cash with Tap to Cash

With Tap to Cash, you can send Apple Cash to someone by holding your iPhone or Apple Watch near their iPhone or Apple Watch, without having to share your phone number or email address.

Note: Tap to Cash is supported on all iPhone models with iOS 18 or later and all Apple Watch models with watchOS 11 or later.
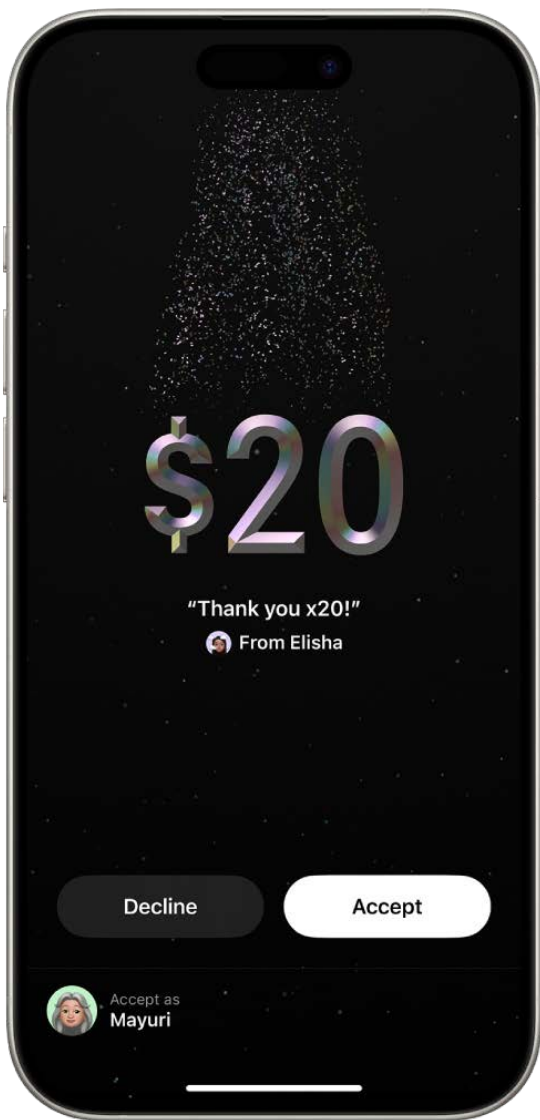
[Alt text: The Tap to Cash screen in Wallet, showing $20 being transferred, and the Decline and Accept buttons at the bottom of the screen.]

1. Go to the Wallet app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then tap Tap to Cash.

3. Enter the amount, add a note (optional), then tap Next.

4. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

5. Hold your iPhone near the recipient's iPhone or Apple Watch.

6. Continue holding the devices near each other until the payment information appears on the recipient's screen.

7. The recipient can choose Accept or Decline.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Use Tap to Cash.

Manage your Apple Cash

1. Go to the Wallet app 🪪 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Apple Cash card, then tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] .

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add money or set up Auto Reload:* See the Apple Support article Add money to Apple Cash.

   - *Transfer funds to your bank:* See the Apple Support article Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or debit card.

   - *Set up and manage recurring payments:* See the Apple Support article Send and receive money with Apple Cash.

   - *See the virtual card number:* Tap Card Number, then use the information for purchases in apps or on the web.

   - *View card details:* Update your bank account information, request transaction statements, contact support, and more.

   Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Related

Apple Cash Support website

Use Apple Cash with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

Use Apple Card on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Apple Card

Use Apple Card on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Wallet app on iPhone, use Apple Card to make purchases, review transactions, schedule payments, and more.

Apple Card (available in the U.S.) is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app on iPhone in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.

- COMMENT - #ba #business or #locations La Colombe Coffee; approved 2024-07 [Crystal]
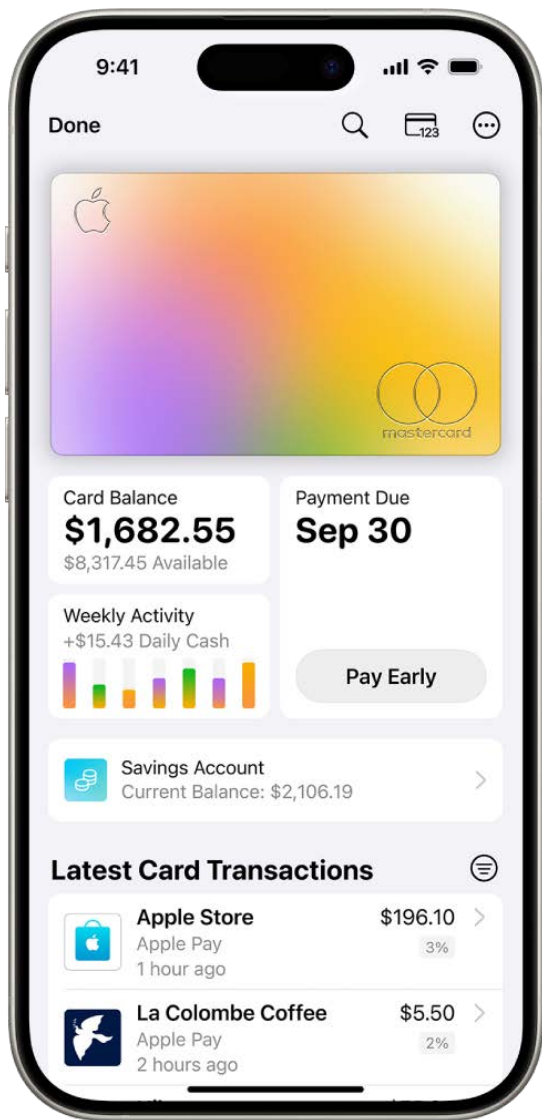
[Alt text: Apple Card in Wallet, showing the More button at the top right. Below the card image are the card balance, weekly activity, and the payment button. The Savings Account current balance and latest card transactions are at the bottom.]

Apply for Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add Card button] , then tap Apply for Apple Card.

For more information, see the Apple Support article How to apply for Apple Card.

Make purchases with Apple Card

You can make purchases with Apple Card in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* At contactless payment terminals and in apps and on the web.

- *With the virtual card number:* In the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] , tap Apple Card, then tap 🔢 [Alt text: the Card Number button] to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.

- *With the titanium card:* In stores, restaurants, and other locations where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted, use the physical card.

View transactions, make payments, and manage your Apple Card

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple Card.

3. Do any of the following:

    - *Review your spending:* Scroll down to see recent transactions or tap 🔍 [Alt text: the Search button] to search. Tap Weekly Activity or Monthly Activity to see your spending for that period.

      See the Apple Support article See your Apple Card spending history.

    - *Make a one-time payment or schedule automatic payments:* Tap the payment button. See the Apple Support article How to make Apple Card payments.

    - *See the virtual card number:* Tap 🔲 [Alt text: the Card Number button] to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.

    - *Manage your account:* Tap ⊙ [Alt text: the More button] to review rewards and offers, see account details, contact support, manage notifications, and more.

Tip: Add the Apple Card widget to your Home Screen to see your balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

Related

Apple Card Support website
Apple Support article: Set up and use Savings in Apple Wallet
Use Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

NAV TITLE: Passes, loyalty cards, tickets, and more

Use passes in Wallet on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Wallet on iPhone, keep your rewards cards, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more in one place for easy access. Earn points on a loyalty card, use a coupon at a store, board a flight, and more.

Use the Wallet app to keep all your passes—such as loyalty and rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more—in one convenient place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the points on a loyalty card, the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or boarding information for a flight.

[Alt text: A boarding pass in the Wallet app, showing flight information and the QR code at the bottom.]

Add a pass to Apple Wallet

When you do something like purchase a ticket, you often have the option to add it to Apple Wallet. You may also get a supported pass from a website or app, a QR code, AirDrop sharing, or after you use Apple Pay with a participating merchant.

1. Tap Add to Apple Wallet.

[Alt text: The Add to Apple Wallet button.]

Note: If you don't see Add to Apple Wallet, contact the merchant or company that issued it to make sure they support passes in the Wallet app.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions or tap Add in the upper-right corner.

Use a pass

1. Access the pass on your iPhone in any of the following ways:

   - On the Lock Screen, tap the pass notification. If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   - If Automatic Selection is turned on for the pass, double-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or double-click the Home button (on other iPhone models). If prompted, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

   - Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] , then tap the pass.

2. To use the pass, do one of the following:

   - *Contactless pass:* Hold the top of your iPhone near the pass reader until Done or a checkmark appears on the screen.

   - *Pass with a barcode or QR code:* Scan the code using the reader.

Related

Apple Support article: Add, use, and share boarding passes, tickets, and other passes in Apple Wallet

Apple Support article: Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Apple Account

Check your Apple Account balance in Wallet on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, add your Apple Account to Wallet to check the balance, add money, redeem Apple Gift Cards, and buy Apple products, accessories, apps, games, and more online.

In the Wallet app, you can check the balance of your Apple Account, add money, and redeem Apple Gift Cards. Use your Apple Account balance to buy products, accessories, games, apps, subscriptions like iCloud+ and Apple Music, and more. You can even use your Apple Account balance as a quick, convenient way to pay at the Apple Store (not available in all countries and regions) or apple.com.

Add Apple Account to Apple Wallet and see the account balance

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add Card button] , then tap Add Apple Account.

The account balance appears below the card.

Add money to your Apple Account balance

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple Account, then tap Add Money.

3. Choose the amount, then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the payment.

Redeem an Apple Gift Card or code

When you receive an Apple Gift Card or code, you can add the funds to your Apple Account balance.

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple Account, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Redeem.

3. Tap Use Camera, then position iPhone so that the gift card appears in the frame.

   Alternatively, you can tap Enter Code Manually, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use your Apple Account balance at the Apple Store

During checkout at the Apple Store (not available in all countries and regions), you can pay with your Apple Account balance using Apple Pay.

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apple Account, then double-click the side button.

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

4. Hold the top of your iPhone near the card reader until you see Done or a checkmark on the screen.

Related

Apple Support article: What you can buy with your Apple Gift Card or Apple Account balance

Organize your cards, keys, and passes in Wallet on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Wallet on iPhone, you can set the default payment card, reorder the cards, archive expired passes, and remove the cards you don't need anymore.

In the Wallet app, you can easily organize the cards, keys, and passes for your convenience. Set the default payment card, reorder the cards, archive expired passes, and remove the cards you don't need anymore.

Rearrange your cards, keys, and passes

1. Go to the Wallet app 🎴 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold a card you want to move.

3. Drag the card to a new position in the stack.

Hide or archive expired passes

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Hide Expired Passes.

Unhide or restore expired passes

To restore an expired pass to the Wallet stack, do the following:

1. Go to the Wallet app 🎴 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Scroll down to the bottom of the stack, then tap View Expired Passes.

3. Choose the pass you want to restore, then tap Unhide.

To unhide all your expired passes, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Hide Expired Passes.

Permanently remove a pass from Wallet

1. Go to the Wallet app 🎴 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the pass you want to remove, then tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] **or** ⓘ [Alt text: the More Info button] .

3. Tap Remove Pass.

Related

NAV TITLE: Remove payment cards

Remove payment cards from Apple Wallet on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Remove cards that you don't use anymore on iPhone. You can also remove debit and credit cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen.

In the Wallet app, you can remove cards that you don't use anymore. You can also remove debit and credit cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen.

Note: If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [*your name*], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in to your Apple Account.

Remove a debit or credit card from your iPhone

1. Go to the Wallet app 🖼 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap the card you want to remove, then tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] .

3. Tap Card Details, then tap Remove Card.

   If you remove a card, you can add it again later.

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on Find My iPhone, you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*], select the lost iPhone, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).

- *Using a web browser:* Sign in to your Apple Account. Click Devices, then select the lost device. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.

- Call the issuers of your cards.

Related

[Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone](#)
[Organize your cards, keys, and passes in Wallet on iPhone](#)

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, customize your preferences for Wallet & Apple Pay in Settings.

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for Wallet app 🖼 [ALT N/A] and [Apple Pay](#).

Customize your Wallet & Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Location:* Control the [location information you share](#).

   - *Siri & Search:* Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Wallet & Apple Pay. You can also allow suggestions and content from Wallet & Apple Pay to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).

   - *Notifications:* Change [notification settings](#).

   - *Live Activities:* Turn on or off [Live Activities on the Lock Screen](#).

   - *Cellular Data:* Turn on or off [cellular data usage](#).

   - P9

     Apple Cash: Turn on or off [Apple Cash](#).

   - *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.

   - *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.

   - *Hide Expired Passes:* Turn on to [archive old passes](#).

- *Express Transit Card:* Choose a card to pay for transit automatically without requiring authentication. See the Apple Support article [Use Express Mode with transit cards, passes, and keys in Apple Wallet](#).

- *Transaction Defaults:* Enter your default information for [Apple Pay in apps and on the web](#).

- *Pay Later:* Shows available payment options from your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.

- *Rewards:* Shows rewards from your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.

- *Compatible Cards:* Checks your [saved cards in Safari AutoFill](#) for compatibility with Apple Pay and allows you to use them in Wallet.

- *Allow Payments on Mac:* Allows iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.

- *Add Orders to Wallet:* Orders from participating merchants are automatically added to Wallet for [order tracking](#).

- *Order Notifications:* Receive notifications for order tracking.

- *Other Pay Later Options:* See additional pay later services not associated with your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.

Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Below Transaction Defaults, set your shipping address, email, and phone number.

Keep your passes up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Wallet.

Allow access to passes when iPhone is locked

Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode or Touch ID & Passcode, then turn on Wallet (below Allow Access When Locked).

Related

[Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone](#)

Weather

Check the weather on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, check the weather and forecast in your current location.

Check the weather for your current location. View the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.

[Alt text: The Weather screen showing, from top to bottom: the location, current temperature, the high and low temperatures for the day, hourly forecast, and 10-day forecast. A row of dots at the bottom center shows how many locations are in the location list. At the bottom-right corner is the Location List button and at the bottom-left corner is the Show Map button.]

Note: Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To make sure Location Services is turned on, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather. Turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast in your

current location.

Check the local forecast and conditions

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. The details for your current location are shown. If you don't see them, tap ☰ [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] , then tap My Location.

   Swipe up to view weather details such as:

   - *Hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.

     Tip: Tap the hourly forecast to see the hourly temperature forecast, chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more. Tap ⌄ [Alt text: the Chart Condition button] to change the displayed weather condition. Swipe left to see the same information for the days ahead.

   - *10-day forecast:* View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.

   - *Severe weather alerts:* View updates for weather events such as winter storms and flash floods. Tap the alert to read the full government-issued alert.

   - *Maps:* View a map that displays the temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind conditions in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, air quality, and wind. See View weather maps.

   - *Air quality:* Tap to view health information and details about air pollutants.

     Note: The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

   - *News:* Read a news article when there's a story relevant to the weather in that location.

   - *Additional weather details:* View additional weather information such as the UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more. Tap a weather detail for more features and information specific to that detail.

     Tip: The Averages weather detail shows how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average; tap it for additional information.
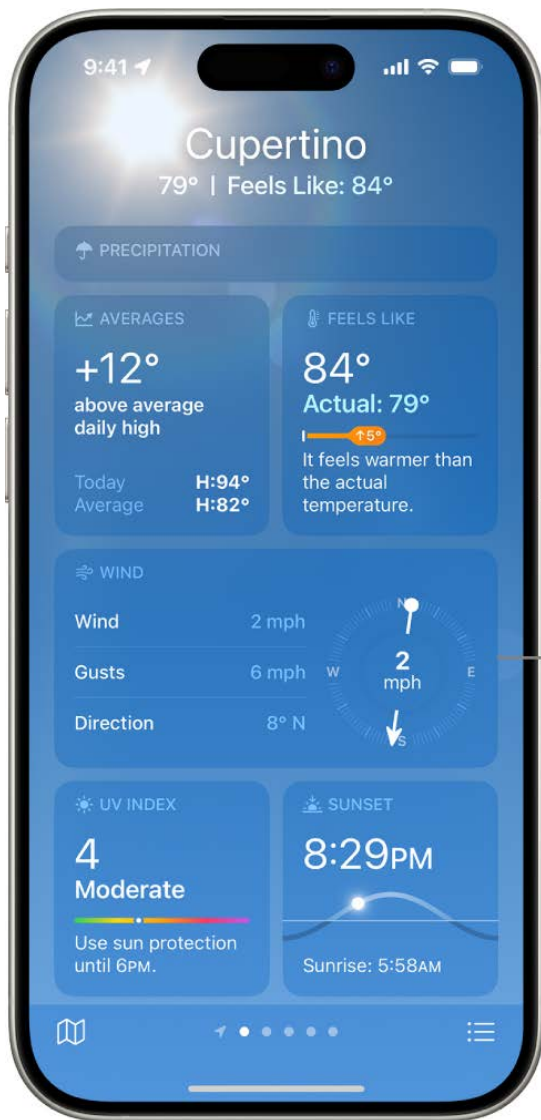
Tap a weather detail for more information.

[Alt text: The Weather screen showing the location at the top, and under it the current temperature and weather condition. The rest of the screen contains weather details for the following elements: air quality, precipitation, UV index, and sunset.]

Some Weather app features—such as severe weather alerts, air quality, next-hour precipitation, and news—aren't available in all countries and regions. To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app.

Customize the weather units

You can change the units used in weather data. This includes Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, and miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ☰ [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] .

3. Tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] , tap Units, then do any of the following:

   - *Change temperature units:* Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or "Use system setting."

- *Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:* Tap ⌃⌄ [Alt text: the Action Button menu] next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ☰ [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] , tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Report an Issue.

3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your Apple Account.

Related

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone
Use Weather widgets on iPhone
Learn the weather icons on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Check the weather in other cities and locations with the Weather app on your iPhone.

Check the weather for any location around the world and quickly access forecasts for locations you save to your list.

[Alt text: The Weather screen showing a list of cities with the current time, temperature, forecast, and high and low temperatures. At the top of the screen is the search field and in the top-right corner is the More button.]

Check the weather in another location

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ☰ [Alt text: the Favorite Locations button] in the bottom-right corner of the screen.

3. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the city, neighborhood, or location.

   Tip: To see your Home and Work locations in search results, go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Weather, then turn on Home and Work. Also make sure to turn on Location Services for Weather.

4. Tap the location in the search results to display the forecast.

5. Tap Cancel to close the forecast, then tap Cancel to clear the search results and return to the list.

Note: Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.

Add a location to your list

You can add locations to the list to quickly check the weather in places important to you.

1. Go to the Weather app [image] [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

    *   *While looking at the location list:* Tap the search field at the top of the list, enter the name of a city, neighborhood, or location that you want to add to your list, tap the location in the search results, then tap Add.

    *   *While looking at one location's forecast:* Tap [image] [Alt text: the Weather Map button] in the bottom-left corner of the screen, change the location of the weather map, touch and hold where you want to add a location, then tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add button] .

To check the weather in locations you added to your list, swipe the iPhone screen left or right when viewing a location, or tap [image] [Alt text: the Favorite Locations button] , then tap a location.

Delete and rearrange locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app [image] [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap [image] [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] to display your list.

3. Do either of the following:

    *   *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap [image] [Alt text: the Delete button] . Or, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Edit List.

    *   *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Related

Check the weather on iPhone

View weather maps on iPhone

NAV TITLE: View weather maps

View weather maps on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: On your iPhone, view full-screen temperature, precipitation, and air quality maps using the Weather app.

You can view full-screen precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.
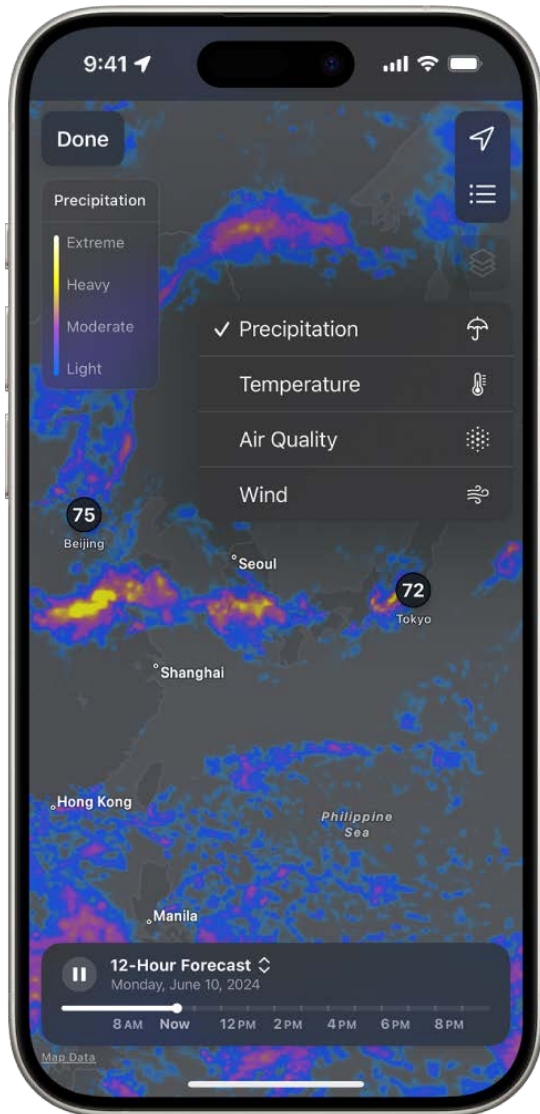
[Alt text: A temperature map of the surrounding area fills the iPhone screen. In the top-right corner, from top to bottom, are the Current Location, Favorite Locations, and Overlay Menu buttons. The Overlay Menu button is selected and displays the Precipitation, Temperature, Air Quality, and Wind buttons. The Precipitation button is selected. In the top-left corner is the Done button and the Precipitation Map Overlay Scale.]

View a full-screen weather map

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Select a location, then tap 🗺️ [Alt text: the Show Map button] at the bottom of the screen.

Note: The type of weather map shown can change depending on the weather conditions for the selected location.

3. To switch to a precipitation, temperature, air quality, or wind map, tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Overlay Menu button] in the upper right.

4. In a precipitation or wind forecast map, do any of the following:

   - *Show the timeline:* Tap near the bottom of the map.

   - *Change the duration of the timeline:* While viewing a precipitation map, tap ⌄ [Alt text: the Menu button] , then switch between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast.

5. Tap Done to close the map.

Change the location of the weather map

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. [View a full-screen weather map](), then do any of the following:

   - *Move the map:* Drag it.

   - *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.

   - *View another location from your list:* Tap ☰ [Alt text: the Favorite Locations button] in the upper right, then tap a location.

   - *Return to your current location:* Tap ➢ [Alt text: the Current Location button] in the upper right.

   - *Add a location to your list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location on the map, then tap Add [*location*], View [*location*], or Open in Maps.

3. Tap Done to close the map.

Related

[Check the weather on iPhone]()
[Check the weather in other locations on iPhone]()
[Manage weather notifications on iPhone]()
[Use Weather widgets on iPhone]()

Manage weather notifications on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Manage the weather notifications you receive from the Weather app on your

iPhone.

You can receive notifications when precipitation or certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations you saved in your list.

Turn on weather notifications for your location

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services.

2. Tap Weather, then tap Always.

3. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.

4. Go to the Weather app 🌤 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

5. Tap ☰ [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] to display your list, then tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Notifications.

   If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

6. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).

7. Tap Done.

Turn on weather notifications for locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app 🌤 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ☰ [Alt text: the Edit Cities button] to display your list.

3. Tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Notifications.

   If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

4. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).

5. Tap Done.

Note: Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

Related

Check the weather on iPhone

Check the weather in other locations on iPhone

Use Weather widgets on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Use the Weather widget to check the weather at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen.

Use Weather widgets to check the forecast and other weather conditions at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. You can choose from a variety of widget sizes and displays.

Tip: You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPhone Home Screen.

1. Add a widget to your Home Screen.

2. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.

3. Tap Edit "Weather" or Edit Widget.

4. Tap My Location, then search for a city or tap a location from your list that you want to display.

5. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPhone Home Screen.

Weather widgets are also available for the iPhone Lock Screen. See Create a custom Lock Screen.

Related

Check the weather on iPhone

Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone

Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

Learn the weather icons on iPhone

> Metadata

Summary: On your iPhone, learn icons for different weather conditions in the Weather app.

The icons in the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

(table aria-label=Basic gestures)

Icon	Description
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing sunrise.]	Sunrise
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing sunset.]	Sunset
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing clear or mostly clear.]	Clear / Mostly clear
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing partly cloudy.]	Partly cloudy
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing haze.]	Haze
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing fog.]	Fog
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing windy or breezy.]	Windy / Breezy
[Alt text: An icon symbolizing cloudy.]	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing thunderstorm.]

Rain

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing rain.]

Heavy rain

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing heavy rain.]

Drizzle / Freezing drizzle

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing drizzle or freezing drizzle.]

Snow

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing snow.]

Heavy snow / Blizzard

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing heavy snow or blizzard.]

Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing freezing rain or sleet.]

Clear / Mostly clear (night)

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing nighttime clear.]

Partly cloudy (night)

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing nighttime partly cloudy.]

Drizzle (night)

[Alt text: An icon symbolizing nighttime drizzle.]

Related

Siri

NAV TITLE: Use Siri

Use Siri on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use Siri to translate, set a timer, find a location, book a reservation, report on the weather, and more.

Get everyday tasks done with just your voice. Use Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, get summarized knowledge from the web, and more.
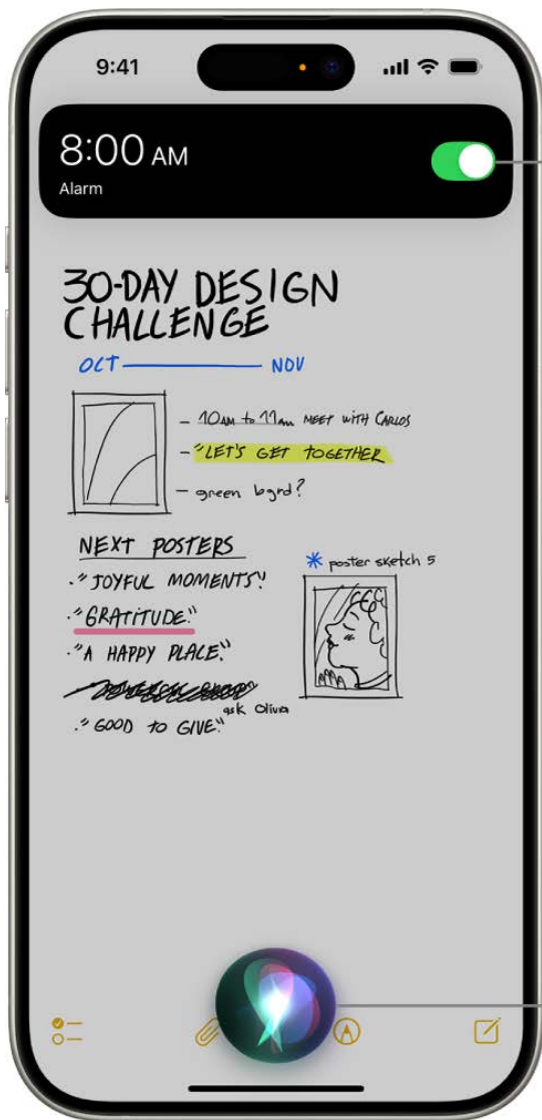
Siri responds to a request for an alarm at 8:00 AM.

Indicates that Siri is listening.

[Alt text: An iPhone screen. Near the top of the screen, a notification from the Clock app shows that an alarm is turned on for 8:00 a.m. An icon at the bottom of the screen indicates that Siri is listening.]

Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Siri, then tap Talk to Siri.

2. Choose "Hey Siri" or "Siri" (if you have that option).

   Note: The option to say just "Siri" is available on supported iPhone models in some languages and regions.

To change additional Siri settings, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

Say "Siri" or "Hey Siri," then ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "Hey Siri, what's the weather for today?" or "Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m."

Tip: To prevent iPhone from responding to "Siri" or "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Siri, tap "Listen for," then choose Off.

You can also activate Siri with your voice while you're wearing supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button, Siri responds silently when iPhone is in silent mode. When silent mode is off, Siri responds out loud. To change this behavior, see Change how Siri responds.

1. Do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.

   - *With EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.

   - *With CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. (See Use Siri to Control CarPlay.)

   - *With Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.

2. Ask a question or make a request.

   For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See Set up Siri in the AirPods User Guide.

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.

- *If you aren't making back-to-back requests:* Tap 🔵 [Alt text: the Listen button] , then repeat your request in a different way.

- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap 🔵 [Alt text: the Listen button] , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.

- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."

- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

Tip: To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPhone models in some countries and regions.)

P9 If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, Siri follows along if you stumble over your words while making a request. See Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone.

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.

2. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

P9

If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can switch easily between speaking to Siri out loud and typing requests to Siri, so you can communicate in whatever way is right for the moment. With Apple Intelligence, you can double-tap at the bottom of the screen at any time to type to Siri. See Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone.

More about Siri

Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri, Dictation & Privacy website and the Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website.

For some requests, iPhone must be connected to the internet. Cellular charges may apply.

P9

Use Siri to access ChatGPT

If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can let Siri use ChatGPT to create content or get information. See Use Apple Intelligence with Siri.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If Siri isn't working on your iPhone.

Related

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone
Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use Siri on iPhone to find answers to questions and to perform tasks.

Use Siri on iPhone to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also discover Siri capabilities on your iPhone and in apps by asking "What can I do here?"

Use Siri to answer questions

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Get Siri's attention, then say something like:

- "What causes a rainbow?"

- "What does a cat sound like?"

- "What's the derivative of cosine x?"

- "Who made the first rocket that went to space?"

- "How do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"

  - COMMENT - #ba #siri #queries
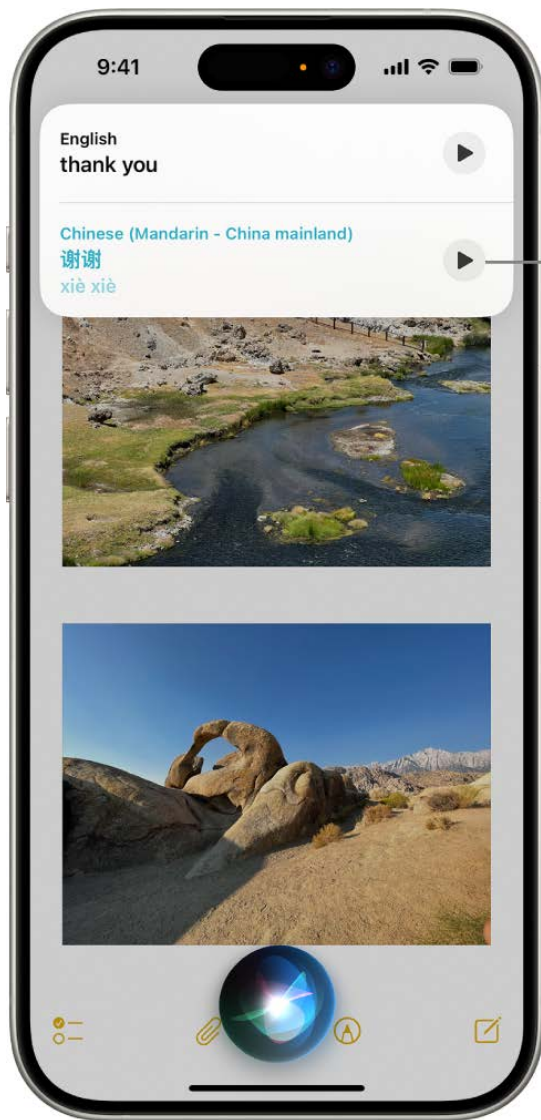
Play the translation again.

[Alt text: An iPhone screen with, at the bottom, the Siri listening indicator and, at the top, a response from Siri in the form of a translation [from English to Mandarin].]

P9

If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, Siri can answer questions about features and settings on your iPhone—as well as other Apple products like iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Watch, AirPods, and HomePod. See Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone.

Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. With Siri activated, say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" to create an event in Calendar.

- "Add artichokes to my groceries list" to add an item to Reminders.

- "Send a message to PoChun saying love you heart emoji" to send a text using Messages.

- "What's my update?" to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

For more examples, see any of the following:

- Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

- Use Siri to play music on iPhone

- Control your home using Siri on iPhone

- Get travel directions in Maps on iPhone

- Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with people in your contacts.

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, activate Siri and say something like "Send this to mom" to create a new message with the photo.
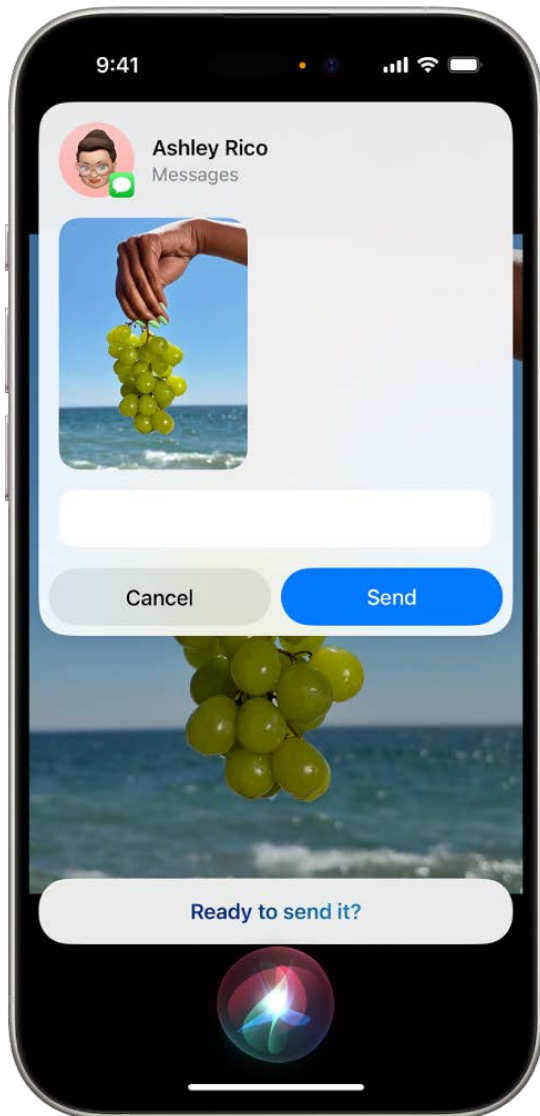
[Alt text: An iPhone screen, with the Siri listening app at the bottom center and, above it, the response from Siri in the form of a text message ready to be sent.]

Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- Siri Suggestions

- Tell Siri about yourself

- Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can also use accessibility features with Siri.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website.

Related

Use Siri on iPhone
Siri website
Apple Support article: Use Siri to play music and podcasts

Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, tell Siri where you work, where you live, your relationships, and more to get personalized service.

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like "Give me driving directions home" and "FaceTime mom."

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts 🖼 [ALT N/A], then fill out your contact information.

2. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Siri > My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts 🖼 [ALT N/A], then tap your contact card.

2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap "add field," select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See Edit contacts.

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like "Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife" or "Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom."

- COMMENT - #ba #siri #queries

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings ⦿ [ALT N/A] , then sign in to the same Apple Account.

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don't want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPhone and your other devices, you can turn off Siri in iCloud settings.

1. Go to Settings ⦿ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud.

2. Tap See All, then turn off Siri.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See Control the location information you share.

Related

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages.

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages ⬛ [ALT N/A] on supported headphones and when using CarPlay. You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say "Hey Siri."

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming phone calls and FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Siri > Announce Calls, then choose an option.

2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say "yes" to accept the call or "no" to decline it.

Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see Set up a Focus.

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Siri > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.

2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

   For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

Respond to Siri announcements hands-free

You can nod or shake your head to respond to Siri announcements while you're wearing supported AirPods. So if you're on the bus to work, you can still use Siri for managing calls, messages, and notifications without having to speak out loud. See Use controls and gestures with your AirPods in the AirPods User Guide.

Related

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, add shortcuts to Siri that you activate with phrases of your choice.

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice.

Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the Shortcuts User Guide.

Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See Use Siri.

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see Change Siri settings on iPhone.

Related

Siri Suggestions on iPhone

Siri Suggestions on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as confirm an appointment or send an email.

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.

- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.

- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.

- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.

- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Siri > Apps.

2. Tap an app, then turn settings on or off.

Change where Siri Suggestions appear

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Siri.

2. Turn on or off any of the following:

   - Allow Notifications

   - Show in App Library

   - Show When Sharing

   - Show Listening Suggestions

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices.

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website.

Related

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use Siri in your car

Use Siri in your car

Metadata

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music that's on your iPhone, get directions, and use other iPhone features.

CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car's built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can control CarPlay with just your voice. See Use Siri to Control CarPlay.

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth® (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To activate Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information.

Related

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Get travel directions in Maps on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change Siri settings

Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice Siri uses, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, retrain Siri with your voice, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see Use Siri. To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see Siri Suggestions.

Change when Siri responds

You can customize when Siri responds to your voice. You can also choose which language Siri responds to.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Hey Siri":* Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.

   - *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.

You can also make requests by typing. See Type instead of speaking to Siri.

Change the voice for Siri

You can change the Siri voice (not available for all languages).

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).

2. Tap Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.

Change how Siri responds

Siri can respond out loud or silently (with text onscreen). You can also see your request onscreen.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.

   - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.

   - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Request.

   - *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

Change Siri settings for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages

You can perform tasks for Phone, FaceTime, and Messages with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Hang up Phone and FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. For more information, see End calls with Siri.

- *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See Send and reply to messages.

On supported headphones, Siri can also announce calls, messages, and more.

Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Search, then scroll down and select an app.

2. Turn settings on or off.

Retrain Siri with your voice

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri).

2. Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.

3. Turn on "Siri" or "Hey Siri" again, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see Change Siri accessibility settings.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article If Siri isn't working on your iPhone.

Related

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone
P9

Apple Intelligence

Get started with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Learn how to get started with Apple Intelligence, the personal intelligence system built into iOS 18.
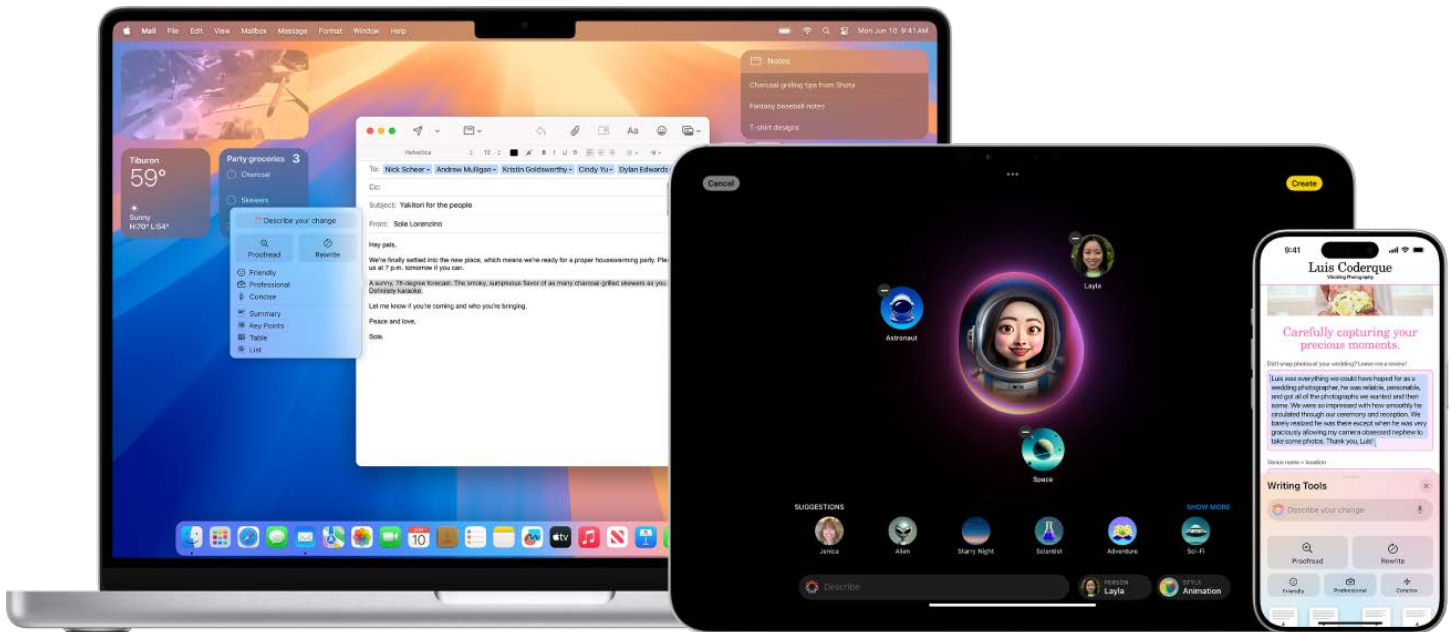
[Alt text: Apple Intelligence features displayed on a Mac, iPad, and iPhone.]

Apple Intelligence is the personal intelligence system built into iOS 18. It combines the power of generative models with an understanding of your personal context to deliver intelligence that's useful and relevant. Apple Intelligence is designed to understand and create language and images; prioritize and summarize notifications, mail, and messages; and draw from the personal information on your device to simplify and accelerate everyday tasks. And it does all this while protecting your privacy.

- **Supported devices:** Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max.

- **Availability:** Apple Intelligence is available with Siri and device language set to English in most regions around the world. For more information, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

- **Turn Apple Intelligence on:** With iOS 18.3 and later, Apple Intelligence is on by default and integrated across features in your apps. If you have an earlier version of iOS 18 (or if you previously turned off Apple Intelligence), go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apple Intelligence & Siri, then tap Get Apple Intelligence.

- **Turn Apple Intelligence off:** Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apple Intelligence & Siri, then tap the button next to Apple Intelligence.

Note: Apple Intelligence is currently in beta. Apple Intelligence uses generative models, and outputs may be inaccurate, unexpected, or offensive. Check important information for accuracy.

Use the new Apple Intelligence features

- Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence

- Use Apple Intelligence in Mail

- Use Apple Intelligence in Messages

- Use Apple Intelligence with Siri

- Get webpage summaries with Apple Intelligence

- Get a summary of a phone call or audio recording with Apple Intelligence

- Create original images with Image Playground

- Create Genmoji with Apple Intelligence

- Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence

- Use Apple Intelligence in Photos

- Use visual intelligence with Camera Control

- Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions with Apple Intelligence

- Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence

- Apple Intelligence and privacy

- Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time

And more…

More Apple Intelligence features will become available in the coming months. See the Apple Intelligence website for details.

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Apple Intelligence, use Writing Tools to summarize selected text with a tap, proofread your work, and find the right wording and tone.

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Writing Tools to proofread your work, create different versions of the same text to help you find the right wording and tone, summarize selected text, and compose content from scratch. Writing Tools are available in most places you write, including third-party apps and websites.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.
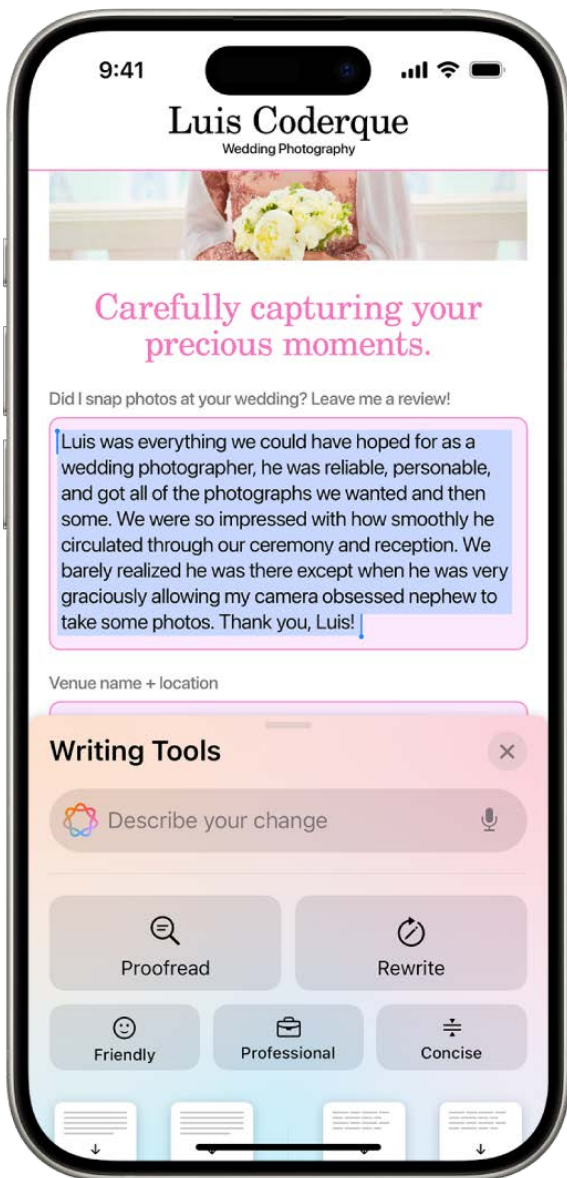
[Alt text: An iPhone showing highlighted text at the top of the screen and the Writing Tools pane at the bottom. The Writing Tools pane shows a field at the top where you describe the change you want. Writing Tools options appear below.]

Proofread text

1. While writing, select the text you want to refine, tap ⟩ [Alt text: the Forward button] , then tap Writing Tools.

   Tip: You can also tap 🌼 [Alt text: the Apple Intelligence button] in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Tap Proofread.

   Apple Intelligence checks your text for grammatical and spelling errors. All changes are underlined with a glowing line.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *View changes and an explanation for each change:* Tap ⌃ [Alt text: the Up button] and ⌄ [Alt text: the Down button] at the bottom.

- *Discard a change:* Tap Use Original.

- *Switch between the updated and original versions of your text:* Tap Original.

- *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap Revert.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Rewrite text

With Writing Tools, you can rewrite text you've just written—like class notes or a blog post—to ensure everything reads just right. You can also adjust the tone of your writing to suit the audience and task at hand.

1. While writing, select the text you want to refine, tap ❭ [Alt text: the Forward button] , then tap Writing Tools.

   Tip: You can also tap ✳ [Alt text: the Apple Intelligence button] in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Rewrite text:* Tap Rewrite.

   - *Rewrite the text in a particular tone:* Tap Friendly, Professional, or Concise.

   - *Rewrite the text based on a description:* Tap "Describe your change," then enter a description—"Make this more enthusiastic," for example.

   A rewritten version of your text appears.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Try the rewrite again:* Tap Rewrite. To undo, tap ↺ [Alt text: the Undo button] .

   - *Switch between the updated and original versions of your text:* Tap Original.

   - *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap Revert.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Summarize and organize text

After writing or reading text, you can use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary. You can also have the summary presented as bulleted key points, or have the original text organized in a list or table.

1. Select the text you want to refine, tap ❭ [Alt text: the Forward button] , then tap Writing Tools.

   Tip: You can also tap ✳ [Alt text: the Apple Intelligence button] in the top-right corner of the keyboard.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Summarize text:* Tap Summarize.

- *Summarize the key points of the text:* Tap Key Points.

- *Organize the original text in a list:* Tap List.

- *Organize the original text in a table:* Tap Table.

  A rewritten version of your text appears.

3. After viewing the summary, do any of the following:

   - *Copy the summary:* Tap Copy.

   - *Replace the original text with the summary:* Tap Replace.

     Note: Replace is not an option if the source text is not editable.

   - *Share the summary:* Tap Share, then choose a share option.

Compose text

In iOS 18.2 or later, if you turn on the ChatGPT** extension, you can compose text in Writing Tools. To get started with ChatGPT, see Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence.

Note: You must be at least 13 years old or the minimum age required in your country to consent to use ChatGPT. For more information, see OpenAI Terms of Use.

1. While typing, tap the text field, tap ❯ [Alt text: the Forward button] , then tap Writing Tools.

2. Swipe up, then tap Compose.

3. Describe what you want ChatGPT to write—for example, "A bedtime story about a girl who visits a magical world where she befriends a caterpillar on its journey to becoming a butterfly."

4. Tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

   ChatGPT composes text based on your request.

   Note: You may be asked to add more details. Tap a field, enter your response, then tap Update. You can also tap Ignore.

5. After viewing the text, do any of the following:

   - *Rewrite text:* Tap Rewrite.

   - *Incorporate suggestions by ChatGPT:* Tap an option, then tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

   - *Revert to the unedited version of your text:* Tap Revert.

6. When you're finished, tap Done.

To block access to ChatGPT, see Block access to ChatGPT.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**ChatGPT uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

NAV TITLE: Use Apple Intelligence in Mail

Use Apple Intelligence in Mail on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Apple Intelligence, view your most urgent emails, craft fast email responses, and summarize complex emails and long email threads.

Apple Intelligence* makes it easier than ever to stay on top of your email. In addition to using Writing Tools to craft your outgoing messages, you can use Priority Messages to quickly view your most urgent emails, like a same-day dinner invitation or boarding pass. Smart Reply helps you compose a fast email response to make sure you covered everything. You can also view summaries that automatically appear in your inbox, and generate summaries of complex emails and long email threads to view all the pertinent details.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

View Priority Messages in your inbox
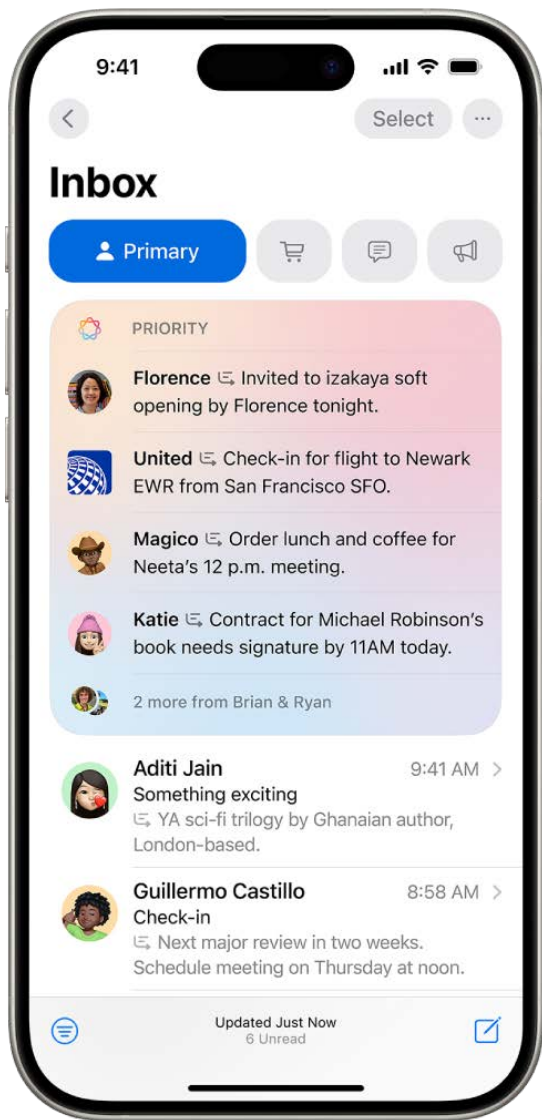
[Alt text: iPhone showing the Priority Messages section at the top of the screen, with time-sensitive emails at the top. Two summarized emails appear at the bottom of the screen.]

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap your inbox, tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Show Priority.

   Time-sensitive emails appear at the top of your inbox.

Use Smart Reply in Mail
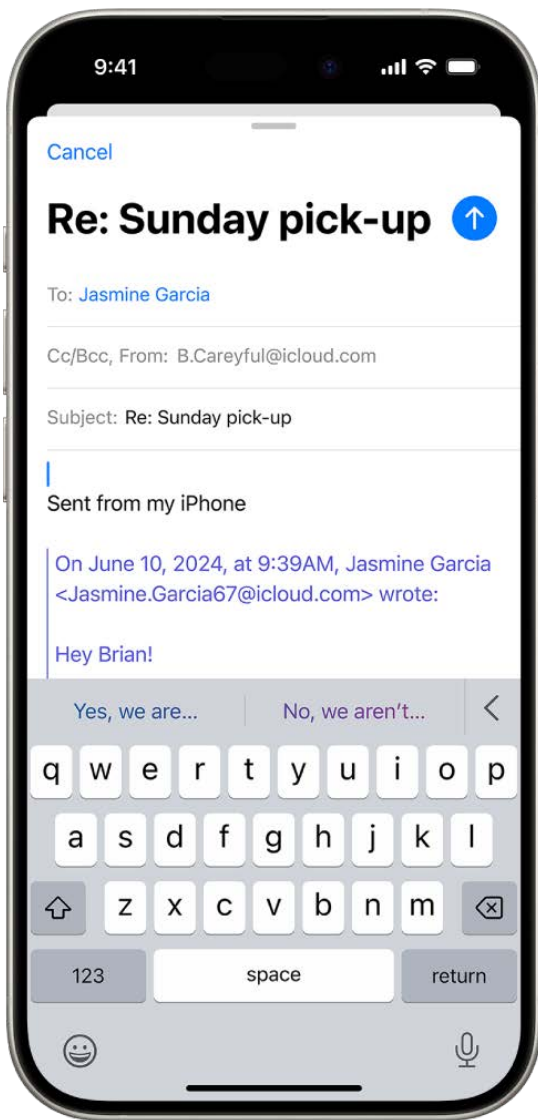
[Alt text: An iPhone showing an email being replied to. Suggested replies appear at the top of the keyboard.]

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap an email, tap ↩️ [Alt text: the Reply button] , then tap Reply.

3. In the keyboard, tap a suggested reply.

    Apple Intelligence drafts a reply in the email. To refine your reply, see Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone.

4. When you're ready to send your reply, tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Send button] .

Summarize your email
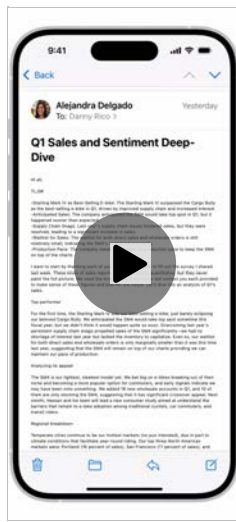
No text track for this video.

Apple Intelligence can help you summarize a complex email, or catch up on a long email thread in seconds.

1. Go to the Mail app ✉️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

   A short summary automatically appears under each email in your inbox.

2. Tap an email, then tap Summarize.

   Note: You may need to scroll to the top of the screen for the Summarize button to appear.

A summary appears at the top of the screen. If the message is part of an email thread, the contents of the thread are summarized.

Turn email summary previews on or off

When you turn on Apple Intelligence, summaries automatically appear under your emails. You can turn off summaries if you want to see the first lines of the most recent message instead.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Mail.

2. Turn Summarize Message Previews on or off.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone
Check your email in Mail on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use Apple Intelligence in Messages

Use Apple Intelligence in Messages on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Apple Intelligence, get summaries of the key points of your messages and craft fast responses with Smart Reply.

Apple Intelligence* allows you to get through your messages even faster with summaries that show you the key points of each conversation, and Smart Reply, which helps you quickly craft a response.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

View message summaries

1. Go to the Messages app ⬜ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Look under a conversation in the Messages list to see a summary of unread messages in that conversation.

Use Smart Reply in Messages

1. Go to the Messages app ⬜ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap a conversation, tap the text field, then tap a suggested reply in the keyboard.

   Apple Intelligence drafts a reply in the text field. To refine your reply, see Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone.

3. When you're ready to send your reply, tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

Turn message summaries on or off

When you turn on Apple Intelligence, summaries automatically appear under your message conversations. You can turn off summaries if you want to see the most recent message in each conversation instead.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages.

2. Turn Summarize Messages on or off.

In iOS 18.2 or later, you can also create and send original images with Image Playground. See Create original images with Image Playground.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

NAV TITLE: Use Apple Intelligence with Siri

Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Apple Intelligence, type requests to Siri, get answers to questions about your Apple products, make back-to-back requests, and tap into ChatGPT's expertise.

Siri is the intelligent assistant that's built into your iPhone to simplify and accelerate everyday tasks. With the capabilities of Apple Intelligence,* Siri is more natural, more contextually relevant, and more personal to you. In addition to using your voice, you can type requests to Siri. You can also take advantage of Siri's product knowledge to get answers to questions about your iPhone and other Apple products. And with your permission, Siri can tap into the expertise of ChatGPT** when it might be helpful for certain requests.

Siri also follows along if you stumble over your words while making a request. For example, you might say, "Siri, set an alarm—wait no, sorry, I meant a timer for 10 minutes—actually, let's make that 15." Siri understands what you meant and starts a timer for 15 minutes.

When Siri is activated, a glowing light appears around the edge of the iPhone screen, and you can keep scrolling or typing while you talk to Siri.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

Type to Siri

No text track for this video.

When you don't want to speak out loud, you can type to Siri—for example, when you're in a quiet place like a meeting or a library.

To type to Siri, double-tap the bottom of the screen, then enter your request.

To turn off Type to Siri, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apple Intelligence & Siri, tap Talk & Type to Siri, then turn off Type to Siri.

Ask Siri questions about your Apple products

Siri can answer questions not only about your iPhone, but also about other Apple products like iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Watch, AirPods, and HomePod. Activate Siri, then say or type something like:

- "How do I download an app on iPhone?"

- "Where do I name a group text on iPhone?"

- "How do I edit photos on iPhone?"

- "I want to block someone from texting me on my iPhone. How do I do that?"

- "How do I make the text on my iPhone bigger?"

- "Tell me how to connect my AirPods to iPhone?"

- "How do I change what shows up in Control Center on my iPhone?"

- "How do I play sound from my TV through HomePod?"

- "Where do I go to log my medications?"

Make requests to Siri that maintain context

With Apple Intelligence, you can make requests to Siri that build on your previous requests, maintaining the context of what you just said.

For example, you can say or type something like "How are the San Francisco Giants doing this season?" Then ask, "When are they playing next?" And finally: "Add that to my calendar."

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.

2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

Use Siri to get answers from ChatGPT

In iOS 18.2 or later, if you turn on the ChatGPT extension, Siri can tap into ChatGPT when it might be helpful to get the information you're looking for. To get started with ChatGPT, see Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence.

Note: You must be at least 13 years old or the minimum age required in your country to consent to use ChatGPT. For more information, see OpenAI Terms of Use.

Activate Siri, then say or type something like:

- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT to compose a haiku about dragons."

- "What should I get my uncle for his 70th birthday? He loves to fish."

- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT for some ideas of how to spend a free afternoon in Malibu if I don't feel like hitting the beach."

- "Hey Siri, compose a limerick about a tiger named Terry."

- "What kind of recipes can I make with this?" with a photo of fruit open in the Photos app.

- "Hey Siri, ask ChatGPT to summarize this document for me," with a document—like a PDF of a lease agreement—open in the Files app.

If you make a request to Siri without mentioning ChatGPT, and Siri determines that ChatGPT would be helpful, it asks if you want to use ChatGPT to fulfill the request. You're always asked to confirm before any photos or files are sent to ChatGPT.

If you want Siri to use ChatGPT without asking your permission for those requests, go to Settings > Apple Intelligence & Siri, tap ChatGPT, then turn off Confirm ChatGPT Requests.

To block the ability to make requests to ChatGPT, see Block access to ChatGPT.

Note: ChatGPT uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Note: To learn more about Apple Intelligence and Privacy, see Apple Intelligence and privacy. To learn more about Privacy and Siri, see Siri, Dictation & Privacy.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**ChatGPT uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Use Siri on iPhone

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Get webpage summaries with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Apple Intelligence, get summaries of webpages from Reader in Safari.

With Apple Intelligence,* you can generate summaries of webpages in the Safari app.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

Summarize a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app ⊘ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⊟ [Alt text: the Page Settings button] , then tap Show Reader.

3. Tap Summarize at the top of the page.

   To return to the normal view, tap ▤ [Alt text: the Details button] , then tap Hide Reader.

You can also use Writing Tools to summarize webpages. See Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Get a summary of a phone call or audio recording on iPhone with Apple Intelligence

> Metadata
> Summary: When you record audio in the Phone and Notes apps, you can use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of the transcript.

In the Phone app, you can record a phone call and then use Apple Intelligence* to generate a summary of the transcript, so you can get to the most important information at a glance. You can also use Apple Intelligence to generate a summary of audio you record in the Notes app— like a class lecture.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

View a summary of a phone call
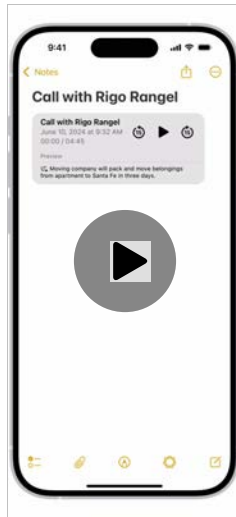
No text track for this video.

1. Go to the Phone app 📞 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Record a call.

   Your recording is saved in the Notes app.

3. Go to the Notes app 🗒 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

4. Open the recording of your call (in the Call Recordings folder).

5. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

To copy the summary, tap ⊙ [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Copy Summary. To share the summary, tap ⊙ [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Share Summary.

View a summary of an audio recording in Notes

After you record an audio note in the Notes app, you can see a summary of the recording.

1. Go to the Notes app 🗒 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open a note with a recording.

3. Tap the recording, then tap Summary.

To copy the summary, tap 😐 [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Copy Summary. To share the summary, tap 😐 [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Share Summary.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

NAV TITLE: Create original images with Image Playground

Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use Apple Intelligence to create one-of-a-kind images with Image Playground.

In the Image Playground app, you can use Apple Intelligence* to combine concepts, text descriptions, and people from your photo library to create stylized images within seconds. You can also use Image Playground to create images in Messages, Freeform, and more.

Note: Image Playground is an Apple Intelligence feature available in iOS 18.2 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.
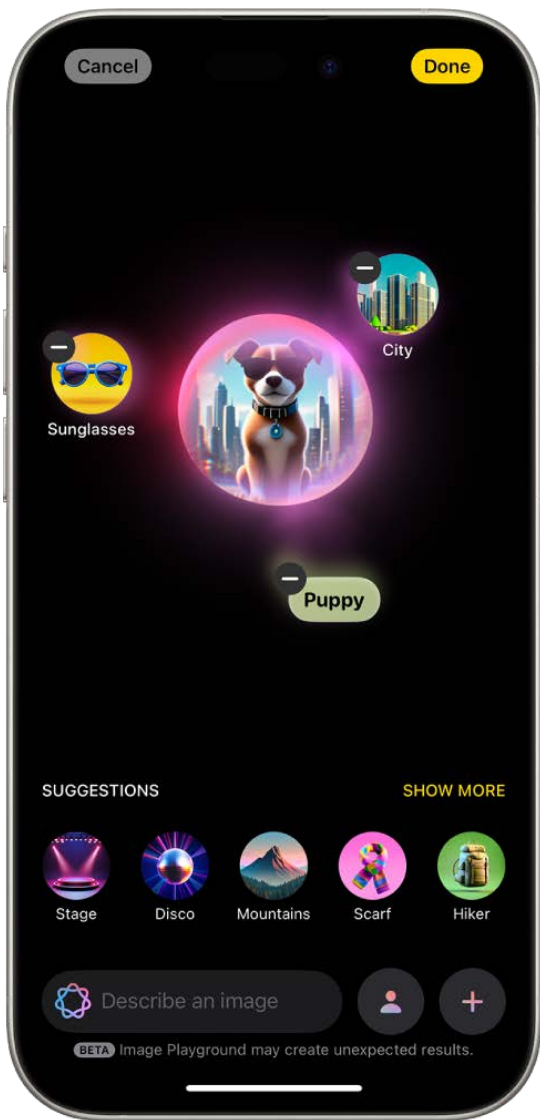
[Alt text: The Image Playground app window showing a created image of a dog wearing sunglasses.]

Create an image

You can combine up to six elements to create original images.

1. Go to the Image Playground app 🐷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add button] , then do any of the following:

   - *Create an image from a concept:* Tap a concept—a theme, costume, accessory, or place.

   - *Create an image from a description:* Tap "Describe an image," enter a description, then tap Done.

   - *Create an image of a person:* Tap 👤 [Alt text: the Person button] , then choose a person from your photo library.

To add a person from Photos, you need to name them in the Photos app. See Find and name people and pets in Photos. If you provide a text description that's different from the image you use—for example, the name in Photos doesn't match the name in your description—your image is personalized based on the photo you selected rather than the text description.

Tip: You can also create an image of a person without using a photo from your library. Tap 👤 [Alt text: the Person button] , tap Appearance, then choose an appearance setting.

- *Create an image based on a photo, such as an image of a pet, nature, or food:* Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add button] , then tap Choose Photo or Take Photo.

- *Change the image style:* Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add button] , then tap Animation or Illustration.

  Note: Changing the image style creates a new set of previews.

3. To see variations of an image, tap the preview bubble, then swipe left.

4. When you're happy with your image, tap Done in the top-right corner to save it to your gallery.

   To view the image in your gallery, tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] .

Tip: Tap 👍 [Alt text: the Thumbs Up button] or 👎 [Alt text: the Thumbs Down button] to rate an image. Your ratings help improve the Image Playground experience.

In addition to using the Image Playground app, you can also use Image Playground features to create original images in apps like Freeform and Messages. See Create and send original images in Messages and Create original images in Freeform.

Edit or refine your image

1. Go to the Image Playground app 🐷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. In the gallery, tap an image, then tap Edit.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a concept:* Tap a suggested concept.

     You can also tap Show More, then swipe left to see Themes, Costumes, Accessories, and Places.

   - *Add a description:* Tap the "Describe an image" field, enter a description, then tap Done.

   - *Add an image of a person:* Tap 👤 [Alt text: the Person button] , then choose a person from your photo library.

To add a person from Photos, you need to name them in the Photos app. See Find and name people and pets in Photos. If you provide a description that's different from the image you use—like a name of a different person, for example—your image is personalized based on the photo you selected rather than the text description.

Tip: You can also add an image of a person without using a photo from your library. Tap 👤 [Alt text: the Person button] , tap Appearance, choose a skin tone and appearance setting, then tap Done.

- *Edit an image of a person:* If you already added a person and you want to change the image, tap 👤 [Alt text: the Person button] , tap Edit, choose a new starting point, then tap Done.

  To change the appearance, tap 👤 [Alt text: the Person button] , tap Edit, make adjustments, then tap Done.

- *Take a photo or choose a photo from your library:* Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add button] , then tap Take Photo or Choose Photo.

- *Change the image style:* Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add button] , then tap Animation or Illustration.

  Note: Changing the image style creates a new set of previews.

- *Remove a concept:* Tap ➖ [Alt text: the Minus button] .

4. When you're finished, tap Done, then tap Save or Save as Duplicate.

   To return to your gallery, tap ❌ [Alt text: the Exit button] .

Copy, share, or save an image

1. Go to the Image Playground app 🌀 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap a saved image, then do any of the following:

- *Copy or duplicate your image:* Tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Options button] , then tap Copy or Duplicate.

- *Share your image:* Tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Share button] , then choose a share option.

- *Add a caption to your image:* Tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More Options button] , tap Add Caption, enter an image description, then tap Done.

Delete an image

Note: If you delete an image from Image Playground, it's deleted on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to the Image Playground app 🌀 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap an image in the gallery, then tap 🗑 [Alt text: the Delete button] .

Create and send original images in Messages

[Alt text: An iPhone showing a conversation in the Messages app. An image created with Image Playground appears in the middle of the screen.]

You can create images with Image Playground directly in the Messages app.

1. Go to the Messages app 🟢 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Start a new message or open a conversation.

3. Tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Apps button] , then tap Image Playground.

4. Create an image, then tap Done.

5. When you're ready to send your image, tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

Create original images in Freeform

You can create images with Image Playground directly in the Freeform app.

1. Go to the Freeform app 〰 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open a board, or tap [Alt text: the New Board button] to start a new one.

3. Do one of the following:

   - *Create a new image:* Tap [Alt text: the Media button] in the toolbar, tap Image Playground, then create an image.

   - *Use elements from your board:* Select up to six images, drawings, text boxes, stickies, or shapes that you want to use, tap them, then tap Add to Playground.

   - *Replace an existing image with an image created in Image Playground:* Add an image, tap [Alt text: the Modify Image button] in the toolbar, tap Replace, tap Image Playground, then create an image.

4. Tap Done to add the image to your board.

To block access to image creation features like Image Playground, see Block access to image creation features.

Share feedback

1. Go to the Image Playground app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap a saved image, then tap [Alt text: the Share Feedback button] .

3. Choose feedback such as "Doesn't match description" or "Doesn't resemble original photo," then tap Send to Apple.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Share content in Messages on iPhone

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Add photos, videos, stickers, scans, links, and other files to a Freeform board on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Create Genmoji with Apple Intelligence

Create Genmoji with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Apple Intelligence, create custom emoji—called Genmoji. Simply describe what you want the Genmoji to look like or create one of friends and family based on their photos.

With Apple Intelligence,* you can create custom emoji—called Genmoji. Simply describe what you want the Genmoji to look like or create one of friends and family based on their photos. You can add Genmoji to messages, share them as a sticker or Tapback, and more.

Note: Genmoji is an Apple Intelligence feature available in iOS 18.2 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.
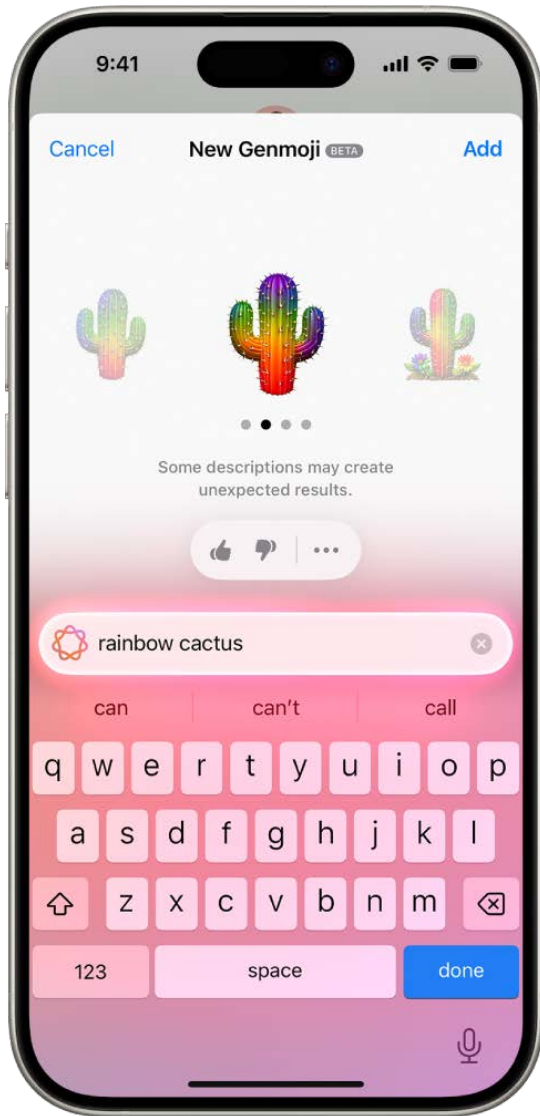
[Alt text: An iPhone showing a conversation in the Messages app. A Genmoji appears in the middle of the screen, above the keyboard.]

Create Genmoji

1. Tap a text field, then tap 😀 [Alt text: the Emoji button] or 🌐 [Alt text: the Next Keyboard key] to switch to the emoji keyboard.

2. Tap 😀⁺ [Alt text: the Genmoji button] at the top right of the onscreen keyboard.

3. Enter a description in the Describe a Genmoji field, like "Rainbow cactus."

4. Tap Done.

5. To add a Genmoji to a message, swipe through to find the Genmoji you want to use, then tap Add.

To create a Genmoji based on a photo, enter the name of a person you've identified in your photo library, add a description—"Danny celebrating his 35th birthday," for example—tap Choose a Person, select a person identified in your Photos library, then choose a variation.

Refine your Genmoji

After seeing the results of your initial description, you can alter your Genmoji simply by changing the description in the New Genmoji screen.

For example, if the original description was "Giraffe riding a unicycle," you can update the Genmoji by typing "Purple giraffe riding a unicycle across the ocean."

Delete Genmoji

1. Tap a text field, then tap 😀 [Alt text: the Emoji button] or 🌐 [Alt text: the Next Keyboard key] to switch to the emoji keyboard.

2. Swipe right or tap 🗇 [Alt text: the Stickers button] .

3. Tap 🗇 [Alt text: the Stickers button] , touch and hold a Genmoji, then tap Remove.

You can also tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Apps button] in a Messages conversation, tap Stickers, touch and hold a Genmoji, then tap Remove.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard
Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone

Use Image Wand with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Apple Intelligence, use Image Wand in the Notes app to create images based on rough sketches you create. You can also select empty space to create an image based on words and images from the surrounding area.

With Apple Intelligence,* you can use Image Wand in the Notes app to create images based on rough sketches you create. You can also select empty space to create an image based on words and images from the surrounding area.

Note: Image Wand is an Apple Intelligence feature available in iOS 18.2 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

Create an image from a rough sketch

1. Go to the Notes app ⬜ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open an existing note or tap 📝 [Alt text: the New Note button] to start a new note.

3. Tap Ⓐ [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button] , create a sketch using your finger, then tap Image Wand.

4. Circle your sketch, enter a description, then tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Send button] .

5. Swipe through the created images to find one you like.

6. Tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add button] to choose a different style—Animation, Illustration, or Sketch.

To refine your image, tap a description, then edit it. To save it, tap Done.

Create an image from surrounding content

Apple Intelligence can create images based on the words and images around it.

1. Go to the Notes app ⬜ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open a note, tap Ⓐ [Alt text: the Handwriting Tools button] , then tap Image Wand.

3. Circle an area near the content you want to illustrate.

You can also create an image from highlighted text. Tap the Image Wand, select a block of text, tap ❯ [Alt text: the Forward button] , then choose Create Image.

Re-create an existing image

When you create an image with Image Playground, all the elements used to create it are saved —sketches, descriptions, characters, and people. You can modify, add, or subtract elements in an existing created image.

1. Tap a created image.

2. Tap ◎ [Alt text: the Recreate button] .

    The image shows the elements used to create it.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a new element:* Enter a description, then tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

- *Modify an element:* Tap a description, edit the text, then tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

- *Remove an element:* Tap ⊖ [Alt text: the Minus button] .

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Create original images with Image Playground on iPhone

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use Apple Intelligence in Photos

Use Apple Intelligence in Photos on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Apple Intelligence, search for specific photos and the most meaningful moments in your videos, create memory movies of stories you want to see, and remove distracting objects in your photos.

With Apple Intelligence,* you can find just about anything in the photos and videos you capture, create memory movies of stories you want to see, and focus on the most important parts of your photos by removing distracting objects.

Search for specific photos and videos with Apple Intelligence
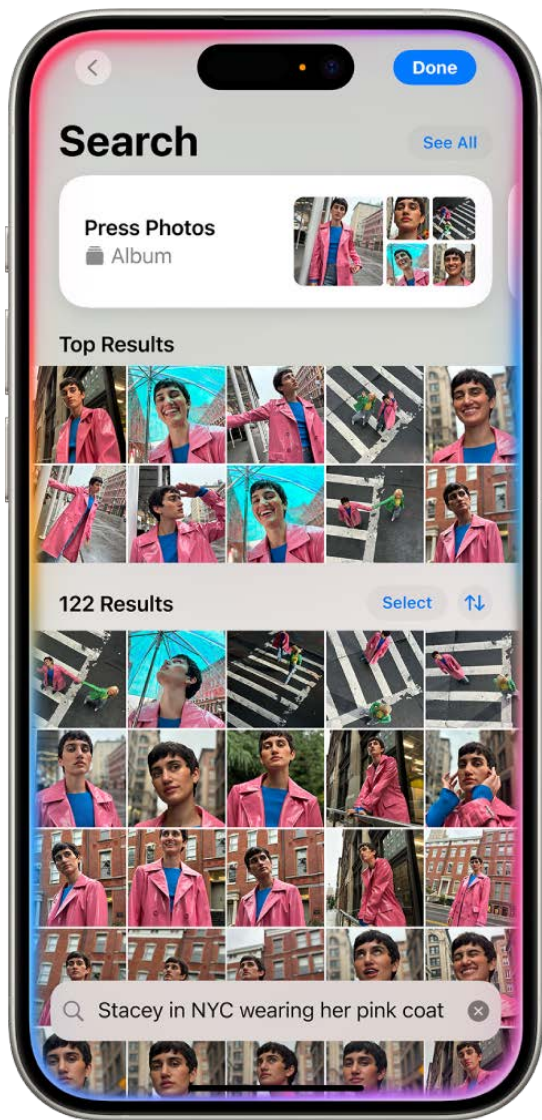
[Alt text: An iPhone showing photos in the Photos app. A search bar with a description appears at the bottom of the screen.]

Apple Intelligence makes it even easier to find a specific photo or a key moment in a video—just describe what you want to find.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

1. Go to the Photos app 🌼 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Search, then enter a description using natural language—"Maya skateboarding in a tie-dye shirt," or "Sadie cartwheeling on the grass," for example.

   Note: For more information on naming people and pets in photos, see Find and name people and pets in Photos.

3. Do any of the following:

   • *See all search results:* Tap See All.

- *Select specific search results:* Tap Select, then select the photos and videos you want to share or add to an album.

- *Sort search results in reverse chronological order:* Tap ⇅ [Alt text: the Filter button] .

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Create a memory movie

You can create a custom memory movie of a story you want to see, right in Photos. Just type a description, and Apple Intelligence finds the best photos and videos, crafts a storyline with unique chapters and a narrative arc, and sets it to music.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

1. Go to the Photos app 🌼 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Scroll down to Memories, then tap Create.

3. Type a description of the movie you want to create from your library, then tap Done.

Remove distractions from your photos

[Alt text: An iPhone showing an edited photo in the Photos app. A figure in the background of the photo is highlighted with a circle surrounding it.]

You can use the Clean Up tool to remove distracting objects in the background of a photo.

Note: Clean Up is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max in most regions around the world.

1. Go to the Photos app 🌸 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open a photo, tap ⚏ [Alt text: the Edit button] , then tap Clean Up.

   Note: After you tap Clean Up, some items may be highlighted automatically so you can quickly tap to remove them.

3. Tap, brush, or circle what you want to remove.

   Use two fingers to pinch to zoom or pan the image.

   Note: If you brush over a person's face, the face may become blurred with a pixelated effect.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Use visual intelligence with Camera Control on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Visual intelligence with Camera Control can help you learn more about the places, objects, and text around you.

On all iPhone 16 models, you can use visual intelligence with Camera Control to quickly learn more about the places and objects around you. Just click and hold the Camera Control to do things like look up details about a restaurant or business; have text translated, summarized, or read aloud; identify plants and animals; and more.

[Alt text: An arrow points to the location of the Camera Control on the side of iPhone.]

Note: Visual intelligence with Camera Control is available in iOS 18.2 or later on all iPhone 16 models. Apple Intelligence must be on to use visual intelligence. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

Get information about a place

You can use visual intelligence to get details about a business in front of you, such as hours of operation, available services, and contact information. Depending on the business, you can also view reviews and ratings, make a reservation, or place an order for delivery. (Available in the U.S. only.)

1. Click and hold the Camera Control, then direct your iPhone camera at the business in front of you.

2. Click the Camera Control again or tap the name of the business at the top of the screen, then depending on the business, do any of the following:

- *View the hours of operation:* Tap Schedule.

- *Place an order for delivery:* Tap Order.

- *View the menu or services offered:* Tap Menu.

- *Make a reservation:* Tap Reserve.

- *Call the business, view its website, and more:* Tap ••• [Alt text: the More button] .

3. Tap ✕ [Alt text: the Close button] or swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Get information about animals and plants

You can use visual intelligence to identify animals and plants.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control, then direct your iPhone camera at a plant or animal in front of you.

2. Tap the result at the top of the screen.

3. Tap ✕ [Alt text: the Close button] to close the results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Interact with text

You can use visual intelligence to interact with text around you in a variety of ways. For example, you can have visual intelligence summarize and translate text or read it aloud. Visual intelligence can also identify contact information in text such as phone numbers and email addresses, websites, and take action depending on the type of text.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control, then direct your iPhone camera at text in front of you.

2. Click the Camera Control again or tap the circle at the bottom of the screen to analyze the text.

3. Depending on the text, do any of the following:

- *Read a short summary of the text:* Tap Summarize at the bottom of the screen.

- *Translate text:* Tap Translate at the bottom of the screen.

- *Hear the text read aloud:* Tap Read Aloud at the bottom of the screen.

- *Call a phone number, start an email, create a calendar event, or go to a website:* Tap the phone number, email address, date, or website at the bottom of the screen. Tap ••• [Alt text: the More button] to see all of the available options.

4. Tap ✕ [Alt text: the Close button] to close the text results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Create a calendar event from details on a poster or flyer

You can use visual intelligence to create an event in the Calendar app when you see an event on a poster or flyer.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control, then direct your iPhone camera at a poster or flyer that contains a date in the future.

2. Tap Create Event at the top of the screen, then tap Schedule.

3. To make changes to the event details, tap Edit, make changes, then tap Add.

    The event is automatically added to your Calendar app.

4. Tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] to close the event details, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Ask ChatGPT for information

You can use visual intelligence to ask ChatGPT** for information about things around you.

Note: You have the option to use a ChatGPT account within this feature. See Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control, then direct your iPhone camera at an object in front of you.

2. Tap 💬 [Alt text: the Ask button] to ask ChatGPT about the object.

    After you tap 💬 [Alt text: the Ask button] , you can type or dictate a follow-up question in the text field at the bottom of the screen.

3. Tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] to close the ChatGPT results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Search Google for similar items

You can use visual intelligence to search Google for items similar to those around you.

1. Click and hold the Camera Control, then direct your iPhone camera at an object in front of you.

2. Tap 🔍 [Alt text: the Search button] to search Google for similar images.

3. Tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] to close Google results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

Note: Subject to Google's terms of use and data privacy policies.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**ChatGPT uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

NAV TITLE: Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions

Summarize notifications and reduce interruptions with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Apple Intelligence can summarize and filter your notifications, showing you the information most important to you.

With its deep understanding of language, Apple Intelligence* can help condense the information most important to you. Notifications are summarized so you can scan them for key details, such as when a group chat is particularly active. And the Reduce Interruptions Focus shows you only the notifications that might need immediate attention, like a text about an early pickup from daycare.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

Customize notification summaries

When you first turn on Apple Intelligence, you can choose which types of notifications you want to summarize. You can also customize these settings later.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then tap Notifications.

2. Turn on Summarize Previews, then tap the notifications you want to summarize.

Turn notification summaries on or off

Your iPhone can summarize long or stacked notifications, making them easier to understand at a glance.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then tap Notifications.

2. Turn Summarize Previews on or off.

Use the Reduce Interruptions Focus

No text track for this video.

The Reduce Interruptions Focus understands the content of your notifications and shows you the most important ones, but silences notifications that are less important.

You can customize a Reduced Interruptions Focus.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Focus.

2. Tap ➕ [Alt text: the Add button] at the top right, then tap Reduce Interruptions.

3. Tap Customize Focus, then tap People or Apps.

4. Choose the people and apps to allow notifications from.

Note: When you turn on Intelligent Breakthrough & Silencing for any Focus, any notifications specifically allowed or silenced will always be allowed or silenced.
*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Change notification settings on iPhone
Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence

Use ChatGPT with Apple Intelligence on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Set up your iPhone so Siri, Writing Tools, and visual intelligence can use the ChatGPT extension to get more in-depth answers, compose text, and quickly learn about the places and objects around you.

If you choose to allow your iPhone to work with ChatGPT* from OpenAI, you can do the following:

Use Siri to access ChatGPT: Siri can tap into ChatGPT to provide answers when that might be helpful for certain requests including questions about photos and documents.

Use ChatGPT with Writing Tools: ChatGPT can compose text or images from just a description.

Use ChatGPT with visual intelligence: Use visual intelligence with Camera Control to quickly learn more about the places and objects around you.

Connect your ChatGPT account: You don't need a ChatGPT account, but if you have one—free or paid—you can connect to your account. With a ChatGPT paid account, your iPhone can use advanced ChatGPT capabilities more often.

You control when ChatGPT is used and will be asked before any of your information is shared.

Note: The ChatGPT extension is available with Apple Intelligence** in iOS 18.2 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements. You must be at least 13 years old or the minimum age required in your country to consent to use ChatGPT. For more information, see OpenAI Terms of Use.

Set up ChatGPT

When you first compose in Writing Tools, access ChatGPT with visual intelligence, or use Siri to get answers from ChatGPT, you may be prompted to turn on the extension. You can also set up ChatGPT in Settings.

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] , then tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.

2. Tap ChatGPT, then tap Set Up.

3. Do one of the following:

   - *Use ChatGPT without an account:* Tap Enable ChatGPT.

     Note: If you later decide to use ChatGPT with an account, go to Settings > Apple Intelligence & Siri, tap ChatGPT, then tap Sign In.

   - *Use ChatGPT with an existing account:* Tap Use ChatGPT with an Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     Note: If you want your requests saved to your ChatGPT chat history, you must be signed in to a ChatGPT account.

Turn ChatGPT off

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] , then tap Apple Intelligence & Siri.

2. Tap ChatGPT, then turn the ChatGPT extension off.

If you want to prevent Siri from suggesting ChatGPT when you make a request, turn off ChatGPT, then turn off Setup Prompts.

To block access to ChatGPT, see Block access to ChatGPT.

ChatGPT and privacy

If you choose to enable the ChatGPT extension without an account, only your request and attachments you choose to send—like documents, photos, or contents of the document—are sent to ChatGPT to answer your request. OpenAI does not receive any information tied to your Apple Account. Your IP address is obscured from ChatGPT, but your general location is provided for purposes such as enabling ChatGPT to prevent fraud and comply with applicable law. OpenAI must process your request solely for the purpose of fulfilling it and not store your request or any responses it provides unless required under applicable laws. OpenAI also must not use your request to improve or train its models. When you are signed in, your ChatGPT account settings and OpenAI's data privacy policies will apply.

For more information about privacy, see ChatGPT Extension & Privacy.

*ChatGPT uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

**Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

Use Writing Tools with Apple Intelligence on iPhone
Use Apple Intelligence with Siri on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Apple Intelligence and privacy

Apple Intelligence and privacy on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Apple Intelligence relies on understanding deep personal context while also protecting user privacy.

Apple Intelligence* delivers intelligence that is relevant for you and grounded in your personal context while protecting your privacy with a groundbreaking step forward for privacy in AI. The cornerstone of Apple Intelligence is on-device processing, so it is aware of your personal information without collecting your personal information.

For more complex requests that require more computational capacity, Apple Intelligence can use Private Cloud Compute, which extends the privacy and security of your Apple products like iPhone into the cloud to unlock even more intelligence. Private Cloud Compute uses larger, server-based models powered by Apple silicon. Your data is never stored. It is only used to fulfill your requests. And independent privacy and security researchers can verify this privacy promise at any time.

Note: Apple Intelligence is available in iOS 18.1 or later on all iPhone 16 models, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

About Private Cloud Compute

When a user makes a request, Apple Intelligence analyzes whether it can be processed on device. For more complex requests, it can draw on Private Cloud Compute, which extends the privacy and security of your iPhone into the cloud. With Private Cloud Compute, only the data that is relevant to your request is processed on Apple silicon servers, before being removed. When requests are routed to Private Cloud Compute, data is not stored or made accessible to Apple, and is only used to fulfill the user's requests. Independent privacy and security researchers can inspect the code that runs on Apple silicon servers that enable Private Cloud Compute to verify this privacy promise at any time.

The Apple silicon servers that form the foundation of Private Cloud Compute provide unprecedented cloud security. This starts with the Secure Enclave, which protects critical encryption keys on the server just as it does on a user's iPhone, while Secure Boot ensures the OS running on the server is signed and verified, just like in iOS. Trusted Execution Monitor makes sure only signed and verified code runs, and attestation enables a user's device to securely verify the identity and configuration of a Private Cloud Compute cluster before sending a request. And to verify Apple's privacy promise, independent experts can inspect the software that runs on Private Cloud Compute servers.

Note: To learn more, go to Private Cloud Compute: A new frontier for AI privacy in the cloud.

Create an Apple Intelligence Report

You can generate a report of requests your iPhone has sent to Private Cloud Compute.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then tap Privacy & Security.

2. Tap Apple Intelligence Report, then choose a report duration for the last 15 minutes (default) or last 7 days. Choose off to disable the report.

   Note: The report may be empty if there haven't been any Private Cloud Compute requests since you changed the duration.

3. Tap Export Activity, choose a place to store the file, then tap Export.

   The report is saved as a file named Apple_Intelligence_Report.json.

4. Open the file with a text reader.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Set Content & Privacy Restrictions in Screen Time to restrict access to Apple Intelligence features like Writing Tools, Image Creation, and ChatGPT.

You can turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions in Screen Time to restrict access to Apple Intelligence* features like Writing Tools, image creation features, and ChatGPT on supported devices.

Note: You can use Apple Intelligence features on any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, a Mac or iPad with M1 or later, or an iPad mini (A17 Pro). To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device and language, see the Apple Support article Apple Intelligence requirements.

Block access to Writing Tools

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then tap Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Writing Tools, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

Block access to image creation features

You can restrict access to image creation features like Image Playground, Genmoji, and Image Wand.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then tap Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap Image Creation, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

Block access to ChatGPT

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then tap Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Tap Intelligence & Siri, tap ChatGPT Extension, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

*Apple Intelligence uses generative models and outputs may vary. Check important information for accuracy.

Related

iPhone safety features

NAV TITLE: Contact emergency services

Use SOS to contact emergency services on your iPhone

> Metadata
> NoIndex

In case of emergency, use your iPhone to quickly and easily call for help and alert your emergency contacts (provided that cellular service is available).

Note: If you have iPhone 14 or later (any model), you may be able to contact emergency services via satellite if cell service isn't available. See Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone.

Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India)

- Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

  Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you quickly press the side button five times. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS, then turn on Call with 5 Presses.
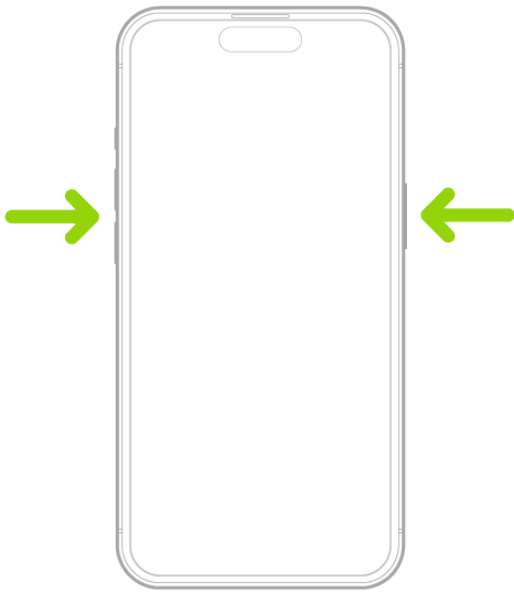
[Alt text: An outline of an iPhone with arrows pointing to the side button and either volume button.]

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

Quickly call emergency services (India)

- Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.

- If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.

By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

Dial the emergency number when your iPhone is locked

1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.

2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap 📞 [Alt text: the Call button] .

Text Emergency Services (not available in all countries or regions)

1. Go to the Messages app 💬 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Type 911 or your local emergency services number in the To field.

3. Type your emergency.

4. Tap the send button.

Share live video or existing photos with emergency services (not available in all countries or regions)

If requested by emergency services, Emergency SOS Live Video allows you to stream live video or upload existing photos and videos to emergency services.
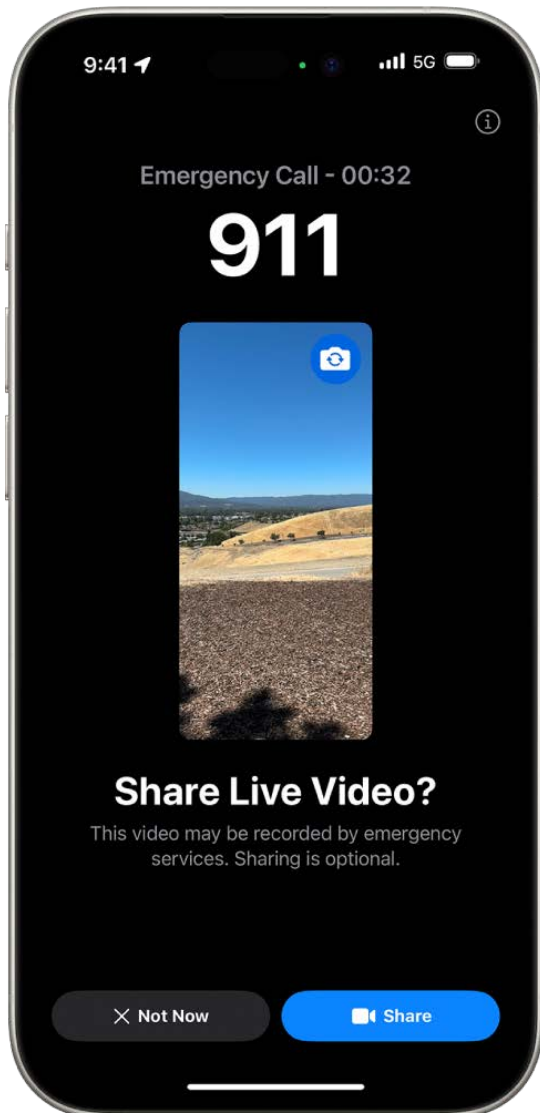
[Alt text: An Emergency SOS Live Video screen showing a 911 phone emergency call with a video preview in the middle. At the bottom are buttons for Not Now and Share Video.]

- If you get a request to share video or photos while on an emergency services call, do any of the following:

  - *Share live video:* Tap Share when prompted to begin streaming live video to emergency services. You can pause or restart sharing at any time by tapping the Camera button. You can stop sharing at any time by tapping ⛔ [Alt text: The End Call button] , then tap Stop Sharing Camera or End Call.

- *Share existing photos or videos:* Tap Choose when prompted, then select the photos or videos you want to send to emergency services.

- *Decline:* Tap Not Now when prompted if you don't want to share videos or photos with emergency services.

Note: Emergency SOS Live Video is available on iPhone 14 or later, is subject to device limitations, and may not be available in all situations.

Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Turn "Call with Hold and Release" on or off:* Hold and release the side and volume buttons to start a countdown to call emergency services.

- *Turn "Call with 5 presses" on or off:* Rapidly press the side button five times to start a countdown to call emergency services.

- *Manage your emergency contacts:* In Health, tap Set Up Emergency Contacts or Edit Emergency Contacts. See Set up and view your Medical ID.

Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.

- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.

- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.

- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a callback from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.

- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.

- On an iPhone with Dual SIM, if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

- When using an iPhone with a USB-C connector and compatible accessory, data transfer over USB 3 and DisplayPort connections will be unavailable once an emergency session (call or text) has been initiated, and will remain unavailable for up to 5 minutes from the end of the session. This time varies by country or region. To continue using your accessory, disconnect and reconnect your device after this period. Charging is not affected and will continue to function.

Related

Apple Support article: Text 911 on iPhone or Apple Watch

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Use Emergency SOS via satellite to text emergency services on your iPhone when you're out of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can use Emergency SOS via satellite to text emergency services when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Emergency SOS via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Emergency SOS via satellite availability.

Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

If you're going somewhere that might not have cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, create your Medical ID, add emergency contacts, and try the Emergency SOS demo before you go.

1. Go to Settings 🌐 [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS on your iPhone.

2. Scroll down and tap Try Demo.

To create your Medical ID and add emergency contacts, see Set up and view your Medical ID.

Note: The Emergency SOS demo doesn't start a call to emergency services.

Connect to Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

If you need emergency services and you don't have a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, you can use Emergency SOS via satellite.

1. Try calling 911 or emergency services. Even if your normal cellular carrier network isn't available, iPhone will attempt to route the 911 call through other networks, if available.

2. If the call doesn't go through, tap Emergency Text via Satellite to text emergency services. You can also go to the Messages app and text 911 or SOS, then tap Emergency Services.

3. Tap Report Emergency and follow the onscreen instructions.
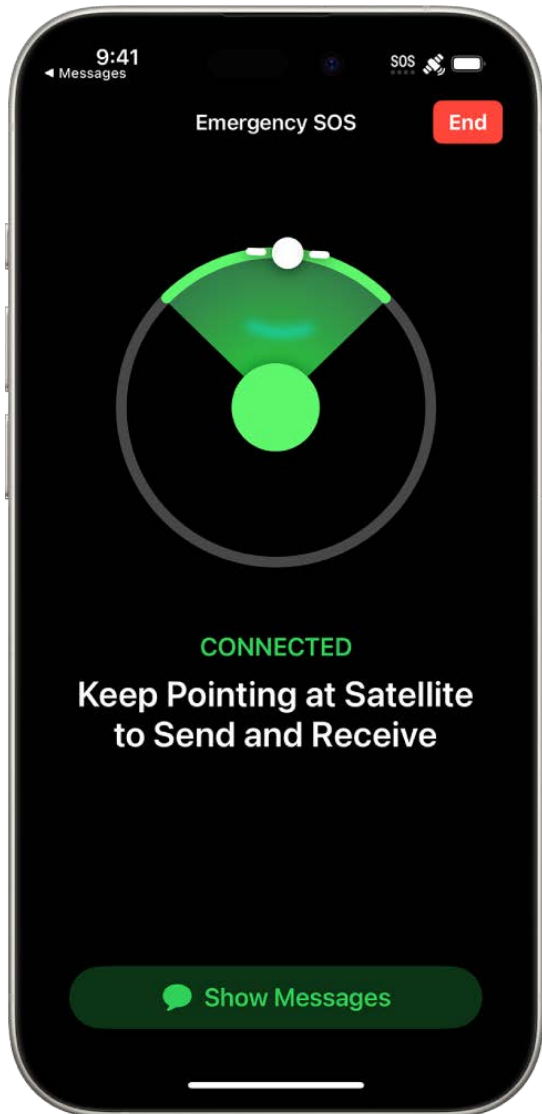
[Alt text: The Emergency SOS screen, showing that the phone is connected and instructing the user to keep pointing at the satellite. The Opening Messages button is at the bottom of the screen.]

Important: To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

After you're connected, your iPhone starts a text conversation by sharing critical information like your Medical ID and emergency contact information (if you set them up), your answers to the emergency questionnaire, your location (including elevation), and your iPhone's battery level. You can also choose to share the information you send to emergency services with your emergency contacts.

To learn how to proactively share your location in the Find My app 🌐 [ALT N/A] when you're in a location without cellular or Wi-Fi coverage, see Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone.

For information about Emergency SOS via satellite and privacy, see Connect to a satellite with your iPhone.

Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Request roadside assistance on your iPhone when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

On iPhone 14 or later (any model), you can request Roadside Assistance via satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Roadside Assistance via satellite requires iOS 17 or later and isn't available in all countries or regions.

Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone

1. Open the Messages app 💬 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap 📝 [Alt text: the Compose button] at the top of the screen, then type "Roadside" in the address field.
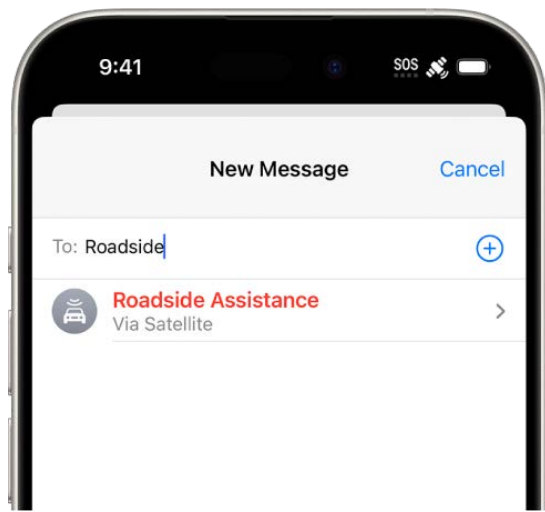
[Alt text: A new message addressed to "roadside." Below it is a link for Roadside Assistance via satellite.]

3. Tap Roadside Assistance and follow the onscreen instructions.

Important: To help you connect to a satellite, make sure to hold your phone naturally in your hand—you don't need to raise your arm or hold your phone up, but make sure your phone has a clear line of sight to the sky. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

Once connected, you'll be asked for important information, like the model of your car and the issue you're having.

After you answer the questions, you'll be guided to connect to a satellite and be able to message directly with a roadside assistance provider. They may ask follow up questions to make sure they're sending you the right kind of help. You can message with them with any questions about the estimated time until someone arrives and any fees associated with the service.

For more information, see the Apple Support article Request Roadside Assistance via satellite on your iPhone.

[Alt text: The Roadside Assistance via satellite screen. The Request Assistance button is at the bottom of the screen.]

Related

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

Set up and view your Medical ID

Metadata
Summary: iPhone and Apple Watch can help provide first responders with information about you that may be important in an emergency.

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts. Your iPhone and Apple Watch can display this information so that it's available for someone attending to you in an emergency and your emergency contacts can be notified if you use Emergency SOS via satellite.

Create your Medical ID

Set up a Medical ID in the Health app.

1. Go to the Health app ❤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.

3. Tap Get Started or Edit, then enter your information.

4. Below Emergency Contacts, tap Add Emergency Contact, then add your contacts.

   After an emergency call ends, your iPhone alerts your emergency contacts with a text message, unless you choose to cancel. Your iPhone sends your current location (if available) and—for a period of time after you enter SOS mode—your emergency contacts receive updates when your location changes.

5. Tap Done.

Tip: To view your Medical ID from the Home Screen, touch and hold the Health app icon, then choose Medical ID.

Allow emergency services and first responders to access your Medical ID

The information in your Medical ID can be shared automatically during an emergency call (U.S. and Canada only), and also appears on the Lock Screen of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

1. Go to the Health app ❤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap your picture at the top right, then tap Medical ID.

3. Tap Edit, scroll to the bottom, then turn on Show When Locked and Emergency Call.

Note: A first responder views your Medical ID from the Lock Screen by swiping up or pressing the Home button (depending on your iPhone model), tapping Emergency on the passcode screen, then tapping Medical ID.

Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you've arrived

Metadata

Summary: Use Check In on iPhone to let your friend know your iPhone has arrived.
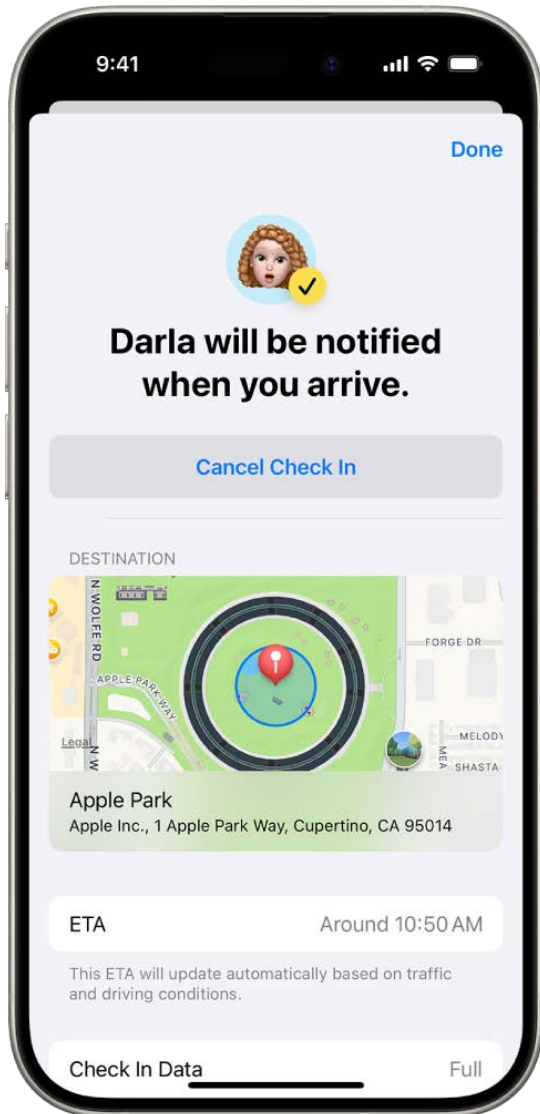
[Alt text: A Check In screen showing a friend will be notified in 14 minutes, below it are options to extend the time or cancel the Check In. At the bottom is a map showing the current location.]

Note: Check In requires iOS 17 or later for both the sender and recipient. Location sharing isn't supported in South Korea and might be unavailable in other regions due to local laws.

How Check In works

You can use Check In on iPhone to automatically notify a friend that your iPhone has arrived, and choose what details they can see if you don't successfully complete your Check In.

Similarly, if a friend sends you a Check In but their iPhone hasn't arrived as expected, you can view their location, battery percentage, cellular signal, and more.

Send a Check In

1. Open the Messages app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap ☑ [Alt text: the Compose button] at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.

3. Tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Apps button] , tap More, tap Check In, then tap Edit.

4. Choose one of the following:

   • *When I Arrive:* Specify your destination, how you're traveling (driving, transit, or walking), and add extra time if needed. Check In monitors your journey and notifies your friend if your iPhone isn't progressing for an extended period of time or if it doesn't reach your destination as expected. When you arrive at your destination successfully, the Check In automatically completes and notifies your friend that your iPhone has arrived.

   • *After a timer:* Specify a period of time—for example, if you're meeting someone new. If you don't end the Check In before the time you set, Check In notifies your friend.

5. Tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Send button] .

   If your iPhone doesn't arrive at your destination or you don't cancel the Check In, and you don't respond to the Check In prompts, the details of your iPhone's journey will be sent to your friend.

   To change the details you want to share with your friend if you don't complete your Check In as expected, see Choose what details you share.

   Note: If you start a Check In and then lose service or your iPhone powers off, your Check In recipient may get a delayed or early notification and have the option to view the iPhone details you shared with them.

Add time to your Check In

If you need extra time, you can add time to your Check In.

1. Open the Messages app 🟢 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.

3. On the Check In message, tap Details, tap Add Time, then select one of the options.

Cancel a Check In

If you've completed your journey, or you want to end your session for any reason, you can cancel your Check In to let your friend know.

1. Open the Messages app 🟢 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open the conversation with the friend you sent a Check In to.

3. On the Check In message, tap Details, then tap Cancel Check In and confirm.

Choose what details you share

You can change the details you share with your friend during a Check In.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Messages on your iPhone.

2. Scroll down and tap Check In Data.

3. Choose what details you want to share if you don't complete your Check In as expected:

    - *Limited:* Share your current location, in addition to the network signal and battery details of your iPhone and Apple Watch.

    - *Full:* Share the data above (current location, network signal, and battery details), in addition to the route you've traveled and the last time you unlocked your iPhone or removed your Apple Watch.

NAV TITLE: Manage Crash Detection

Manage Crash Detection on iPhone 14 or later

> Metadata
> Summary: Use iPhone to detect a Crash Detection event.

What is Crash Detection?

If your iPhone 14 or later (any model) detects a severe car crash, it can help connect you to emergency services and notify your emergency contacts.

How Crash Detection works

When your iPhone detects a severe car crash, it will display an alert and will automatically initiate an emergency phone call after 20 seconds unless you cancel. If you are unresponsive, your iPhone will play an audio message for emergency services, which informs them that you've been in a severe crash and gives them your latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates with an approximate search radius.

When a crash is detected, Crash Detection won't override any existing emergency calls placed by other means.

If you're in a severe car crash and unresponsive in a location without a cellular or Wi-Fi connection, iPhone will attempt to contact emergency services using Emergency SOS via satellite, where available.

Turn Crash Detection on or off

Crash Detection is on by default. You can turn off alerts and automatic emergency calls from Apple after a severe car crash in Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Emergency SOS, then turn off Call After Severe Crash. If you have third-party apps registered to detect crashes on your device, they will still be notified.

If you have CarPlay or Apple Watch

If your iPhone has Crash Detection turned on and is connected to your vehicle through CarPlay, the Crash Detection features (dialing emergency services) will go through your iPhone.

If you're wearing your Apple Watch at the time of the event, dialing emergency services will be placed by iPhone but Crash Detection features will be routed through Apple Watch.

For more information, see Use Crash Detection on iPhone or Apple Watch to call for help in an accident.

NAV TITLE: Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

Reset privacy and security settings in an emergency

> Metadata
> NoIndex

You can use Safety Check on iPhone to quickly stop sharing your device access and personal information with others. Safety Check helps you quickly change your passcode and Apple Account password, stop sharing your location with Find My, restrict Messages and FaceTime to the device in your hand, and more.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Safety Check on your iPhone.

2. Tap Emergency Reset, tap Start Emergency Reset, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can also use Safety Check to periodically review and update the information you share with people, apps, and devices. To learn more about what Safety Check does, see How Safety Check on iPhone works to keep you safe in the Personal Safety User Guide.

Important: You might also be sharing information that Safety Check can't review or change— for example, accounts and passwords, social media sharing, and information shared from another device. To help you decide on additional steps for reducing the information you share, see Additional considerations when using Safety Check in the Personal Safety User Guide.

Family Sharing

Set up Family Sharing on iPhone

> Metadata
> NoIndex
> Summary: On iPhone, set up Family Sharing to share App Store, music, movie, TV, and book purchases; Apple and App Store subscriptions; and more with family members.

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, eligible purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article System requirements for iCloud.

[Alt text: The Family Sharing screen in Settings. Five family members are listed and 4 subscriptions are shared with the family.]

Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Family > Set Up, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.

2. Invite one or more family members. When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian. Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

   You can also add family members later. See Add a member to a Family Sharing group.

3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.

To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article Set up Family Sharing.

What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- *Passwords and passkeys*: You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPhone.

- *An iCloud Drive folder*: Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See Share files and folders in iCloud Drive.

- *Apple and App Store subscriptions:* You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members.

- *Purchases:* You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing.

- *Locations:* When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app ⊙ [ALT N/A] to see your location and help locate a missing device. See Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices.

- P9

  Apple Card and Apple Cash: You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing (U.S. only).

- *Parental controls:* You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing.

- *A device for your child:* You can set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. See Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing.

See recommendations for Family Sharing features

To see suggestions to help you get the most out of Family Sharing, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family, then tap Recommended For Your Family.

Related

Use iCloud on iPhone
Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?
Apple Support article: If you don't see your family's shared content

Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Family Sharing on iPhone, you can add members or create an Apple Account for a child.

With Family Sharing, each family member joins the family group with their own Apple Account. That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple Account or create an Apple Account for a child who doesn't have one yet.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Add a family member with an Apple Account

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family, then tap 👤 [Alt text: the Add Member button] in the upper-right corner.

2. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their Apple Account email address (or phone number) and password on your device.

People you invite see your invitation at the top of Settings in the Family row. If they haven't accepted your invitation, you can also follow up with reminders.

Create an Apple Account for a child

Children under 13 can't create an Apple Account on their own. (This age varies by country or region.) But if you're the family organizer or a parent or guardian, you can create an Apple Account for a child and add them to the Family Sharing group.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *If you're the organizer:* Tap 👤 [Alt text: the Add Member button] , then tap Create Child Account.

Note: If your child already has an Apple Account, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple Account and password on your device to accept the invitation.

- *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap 👥 [Alt text: the Add Member button] .

3. Enter the child's name and birthday. The child's birthday is used to set suggested content restrictions that determine the content they can access. You can adjust these content restrictions later by going to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family > [*child's name*] > Screen Time > Parental Controls on your device and dragging the age slider.

   You can also manually set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime in Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time; share your child's location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:

   - Set up Screen Time for a family member

   - Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices

   - Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account.

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple Account, see the Apple Support article Create an Apple Account for your child.

P9 To change device settings for image creation features, Writing Tools, and the ChatGPT extension, see Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time.

Note: You can use Apple Intelligence features on any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, a Mac or iPad with M1 or later, or an iPad mini (A17 Pro).

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, ask the organizer to add you. You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See Leave a Family Sharing group.

Related

Mac User Guide: Join a Family Sharing group in Family Sharing on Mac
Apple Support article: Make sure that each family member has a unique Apple Account

NAV TITLE: Remove Family Sharing members

Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: With Family Sharing on iPhone, you can leave the group or, if you're an organizer, remove another member or disband the group.

In a Family Sharing group, the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap [*member's name*], then tap Remove [*member's name*] from Family.

You can't remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple Account. See the Apple Support article Move a child to another group using Family Sharing.

If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See Set up Screen Time for a family member.

Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

Note: The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Disband a Family Sharing group

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

Note: If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move the child to another group or delete their Apple Account before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article Move a child to another group using Family Sharing.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Related

NAV TITLE: **Share subscriptions**

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Family Sharing on iPhone, share a subscription to iCloud+, Apple Music, Apple News+, Apple Arcade, Apple Fitness+, Apple TV+, and Apple TV channels with family members. You can also share App Store subscriptions.

When you're in a Family Sharing group, you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has purchase sharing turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

Note: Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:

   - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- P9

  Apple Arcade: See Subscribe to Apple Arcade. All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account —your progress is carried over between devices.

- P9

Apple Fitness+: See Apple Fitness+ at a glance in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.

- *Apple Music:* See Subscribe to Apple Music. With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.

- P9

  Apple News+: See Subscribe to Apple News+. All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.

- P9

  Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels: See Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel and Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps. Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple Account and password.

- *iCloud+:* See Subscribe to iCloud+. When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see Get apps in the App Store.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family > Subscriptions > Manage Subscriptions.

2. Do either of the following:

   - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.

   - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

     If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

Related

Apple Support article: What types of content can I share with my family?

Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases

with Family Sharing on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, you can share purchases in the App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books with members of your Family Sharing group.

With Family Sharing, the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See Set up parental controls with Family Sharing.

Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Access shared content

When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download eligible apps and content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- How to download apps and content that your family members purchased

- What types of content can I share with my family?

- If you can't find your family's shared content

Turn off purchase sharing for yourself

You can turn off purchase sharing for yourself. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

Note: Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family > Purchase Sharing.

2. Tap [*your name*], then turn off Share Purchases.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books.

You can also share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members.

Related

Manage App Store purchases, settings, and restrictions

Apple Support article: Remove a payment method from your Apple Account

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, share your location with family members and locate a family member's device that has been lost or misplaced using the Find My app.

With Family Sharing, you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can see your location in Find My. You can also get notified when family members change their locations—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family > Location Sharing.

2. Select the family member you want to share your location with.

   You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

   You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

Note: Children and teens with Screen Time turned on may not be able to change their own

location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings ⬡ [ALT N/A] >
Privacy & Security. See Control the location information you share.

Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate
a missing device added to the Find My app.

See Locate a device in Find My.

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown
AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. In the notification, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.

2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use Find Devices on iCloud.com to locate a family member's missing device. See
Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

P9 NAV TITLE: Set up Apple Cash Family and Apple Card Family

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPhone (U.S. only)

Metadata
NoIndex
Summary: When you set up Family Sharing on iPhone, you can share Apple Card with trusted
family members or set up Apple Cash for your child.

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your Family Sharing group. The organizer of the
Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted
members of their Family Sharing group.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Set up Apple Cash Family for a child

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

1. Go to Settings ⬡ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.

3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and narrow the list of people that the child can send money to, go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay. See Apple Cash Support.

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles Set up and use Apple Cash Family and View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity.

Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family > Share My Apple Card.

   The option only appears if you have Apple Card.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants.

Related

Turn on Ask to Buy

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

Metadata
NoIndex
Summary: On iPhone, set up Screen Time and Ask to Buy for children with Family Sharing.

With Family Sharing, the organizer, or another adult designated as parent/guardian, can set up parental controls for children or other members in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for eligible purchases and free downloads.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Customize parental controls during setup

When you add a child to your Family Sharing group or set up a device for a child, you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies

- Downtime and limits for specific apps

- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with

- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See Check for sensitive images on iPhone.

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases.

Set up Screen Time for a child

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article System Requirements for iCloud.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family > [*child's name*] > Screen Time.

2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.

3. Tap Screen Time, then do any of the following:

   - *Change restrictions for iTunes & App Store purchases:* Tap iTunes & App Store purchases, then choose options for purchasing and downloading from the iTunes Store and App Store.

   - *Change access to apps and features:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off any apps or features you want to restrict access to. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.

   - *Change ratings and restrictions for App Store, Media, Web, & Game Center content:* Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games, then choose options for age-appropriate content ratings and access.

4. Continue following the onscreen instructions to set up Screen Time options.

   For information about Screen Time settings, see Set up Screen Time.

To learn more about the different content and privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time or in Messages 💬 [ALT N/A] .

Turn on Ask to Buy

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Family.

2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.

3. Tap Ask To Buy, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy.

Note: Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.
P9

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing (U.S. only).

Related

Apple Support article: If you forgot your Screen Time passcode
Apple Support article: If Ask to Buy isn't working

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With Family Sharing, use your iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child in your family group.

With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPhone to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up a device for a child without using Quick Start.

If you didn't sign in to a child's account when you set up their device, you can do so in Settings with their Apple Account and password, or by using proximity sign-in with a nearby iPhone or iPad.

Note: If the child already has an Apple Account, make sure they've been added to your Family Sharing group. If the child doesn't have an Apple Account and they're under 13 (this age varies by region), you can create an Apple Account for them while adding them to the group.

Use Quick Start to set up an iPhone or iPad for a child
Note: Requires iOS 16 or later. Bluetooth must be turned on.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] , then sign in to your Apple Account on your iPhone.

2. On the new iPhone or iPad you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.

3. Bring your iPhone next to the new device.

4. When you see Set Up New [*device*] on your iPhone, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:

   • If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.

   • If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child who is under 13, tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple Account for your child.

5. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.

2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Set Up for a Child in My Family.

3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

Set up an iPhone or iPad for a child in Settings
If you didn't sign in to a child's account during setup, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] .

2. Tap Sign in to your iPhone.

3. Do one of the following:

   • *Sign in with a nearby iPhone or iPad:* Tap Use Another Apple Device, then follow the onscreen instructions. If you already have a child in your family group, tap their name, then tap Get Started. If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child, tap Create New Child Account.

- *Sign in with an email address or phone number and password:* Tap Sign in Manually, then tap Sign in a child in my Family.

4. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; set up Screen Distance; share locations with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and turn on Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time.

Note: Screen Distance is available on supported models.

Related

Family Sharing website

Set up Screen Time on iPhone

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone

Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy

Screen Time

Get started with Screen Time on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Settings on iPhone, get a report of your device use.

You can get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices —including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device. Screen Time also lets you schedule time away from the screen and set limits for app use.

Turn on Screen Time

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.

Tap here to get started setting up Screen Time.

[Alt text: The screen for setting up Screen Time, showing the App & Website Activity button.]

Use Screen Time on all your devices

You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you turn on Screen Time, you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPhone and other devices, which apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.

3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.
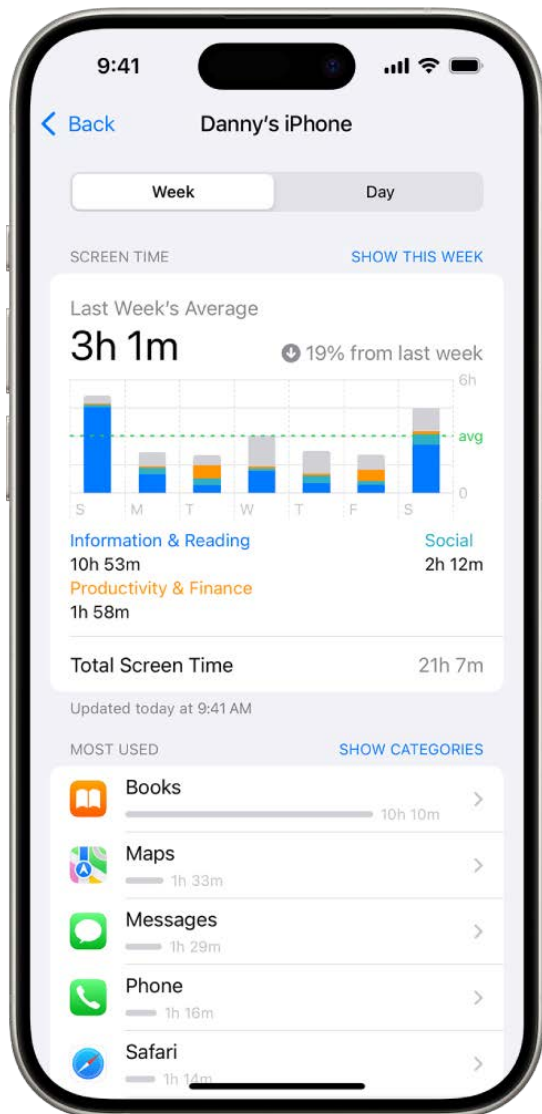
[Alt text: A Screen Time weekly report, showing the total amount of time spent on apps, by app and by category.]

Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by adding a Screen Time widget to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you set up Screen Time for family members through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can find it in Notification Center.)

Related

Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: In Screen Time on iPhone, turn on Screen Distance to reduce the risk of myopia and eyestrain.

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia for younger users and eyestrain for users of all ages. The Screen Distance feature in Screen Time uses the TrueDepth camera (on supported models) to detect when you hold iPhone closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

Note: Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

Turn Screen Distance on or off

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn Screen Distance on or off.

With Screen Distance on, when you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPhone more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.

[Alt text: A screen warning that you're holding the iPhone too close and that you should move it farther away to protect your vision health. The warning covers the screen, stopping you from continuing. There's a Continue button that becomes active when you've moved your iPhone a safe distance away.]

NAV TITLE: Set up Screen Time

Set up Screen Time on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Settings on iPhone, set up Screen Time allowances and limits for yourself.

You can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

Schedule time away from the screen

Block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to allow communication with during downtime, and you can use apps you've chosen to allow at all times.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap App & Website Activity, then turn on App & Website Activity if you haven't already.

3. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:

   • Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.

   • Turn on Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.

   When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.

4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

Set limits for app use

Set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.

3. Select one or more app categories.

   To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

4. Tap Next at the top right, then set the amount of time allowed.

   To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

Specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times (for example, in the event of an emergency), even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time > Always Allowed.

2. Below Allowed Apps, tap 🟢 [Alt text: the Insert button] or 🔴 [Alt text: the Remove button] next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.

3. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.

   The option you selected in Communication Limits appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

   - *Choose From My Contacts:* To select specific people to allow communication with.

   - *Add New Contact:* To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.

4. Tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.

Related

Set up Screen Time for a family member
Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content

Set communication limits and block apps and content on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Screen Time on iPhone, set safety limits and privacy protections.

Set communication limits and privacy protections and block content and apps on iPhone.

Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Contacts.

2. Go to Settings > Screen Time.

3. Tap Communication Limits, tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):

   - *Contacts Only:* To allow communication only with your contacts.

- *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact:* To only allow one-on-one conversations with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.

- *Everyone:* To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.

4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

   The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

   - *Choose From My Contacts:* To select contacts to allow communication with during downtime.

   - *Add New Contact:* To add a contact and allow communication with them during Downtime.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with them when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to have Screen Time restrict access to inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Set restrictions for store purchases and redownloads:* Tap iTunes & App Store Purchases.

   - *Remove an app or feature from the Home Screen:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features.

   - *Set content ratings and other restrictions for App Store, Media, Web, & Game Center:* Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games.

   - P9

     Restrict access to Apple Intelligence, Siri, and Math Results: Tap Intelligence & Siri. (See Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time.)

- *Allow changes to privacy settings in certain features, apps, or media:* Tap an option below Privacy, then tap Allow Changes or Don't Allow Changes.

- *Allow changes to other settings:* Tap an option below Allow Changes To, then tap Allow or Don't Allow.

P9

To allow access to image creation features, Writing Tools, and the ChatGPT extension, see Block access to Apple Intelligence features in Screen Time.

Note: You can use Apple Intelligence features on any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, a Mac or iPad with M1 or later, or an iPad mini (A17 Pro).

Turn built-in apps and features on or off

Restrict the use of built-in apps or features. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.

1. Go to Settings ⏺ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off the apps or features you want to restrict.

Block adult websites

You can block specific websites by URL.

1. Go to Settings ⏺ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Tap App Store, Media, Web, & Games, then tap Web Content.

4. Select Limit Adult Websites, tap Add Website below Never Allow, and enter the URLs of the websites you want to block

Lock your Screen Time settings

You can secure your Screen Time settings by entering a Screen Time passcode. That way, no one can change the settings without first entering the Screen Time passcode.

1. Go to Settings ⏺ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Lock Screen Time Settings (scroll down, if necessary).

3. Enter a four-digit passcode, reenter it, then tap OK.

   If you forget your Screen Time passcode, see the Apple support article If you forgot your Screen Time passcode.

Related

Check for sensitive images on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: You can have iPhone detect nudity in images before they're sent or received.

Your iPhone (or your family member's iPhone) can detect nudity in images before they're viewed in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article About Communication Safety on your child's Apple device.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

   When Communication Safety is turned on, iPhone detects nude images before they're viewed, and displays a warning.

   The parent's Screen Time passcode must be entered before any image determined by iPhone to contain nudity can be viewed.
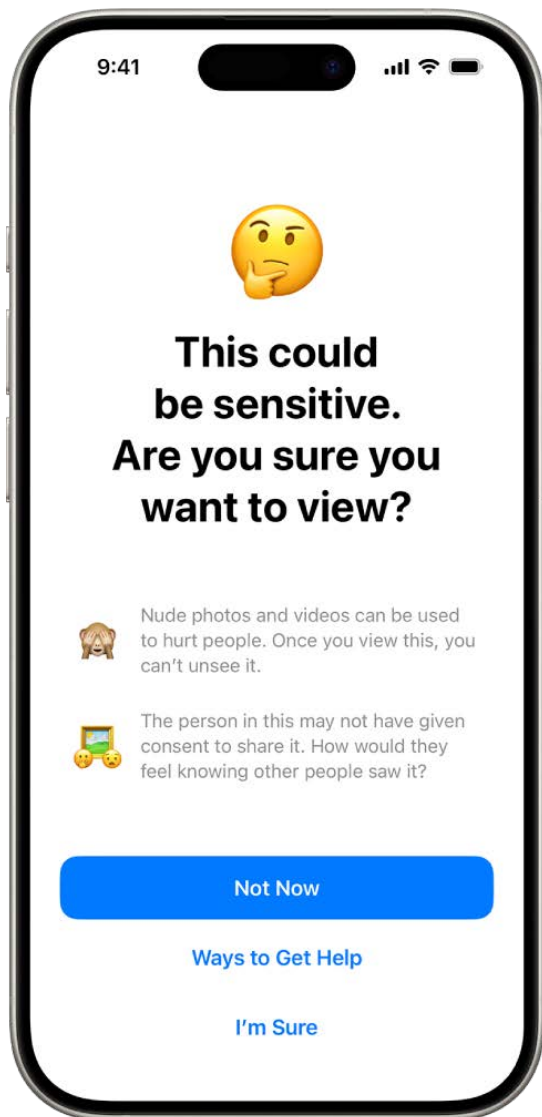
[Alt text: The Sensitive Content Warning screen, warning of possible nudity in an image. At the bottom of the screen are three buttons that answer the question, "Are you sure you want to view?" The buttons are Not Now, Ways to Get Help, and I'm Sure.]

Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See Receive warnings about sensitive content.

NAV TITLE: Set up Screen Time for a family member

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Set up Screen Time for a family member either on their device or through Family Sharing on your device.

You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device by following the steps in Set up Screen Time, or if they're in a Family Sharing group for which you're the organizer, you can set up Screen Time for them through Family Sharing on your device.

If you're the organizer (or a parent or guardian) of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you enter the child's name and birthday. The child's birthday is used to set suggested content restrictions that determine the content they can access. You can adjust these content restrictions later by going to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Family > [child's name] > Screen Time > Parental Controls on your device and dragging the age slider.

You can also manually set up content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime in Settings > Screen Time on the child's device.

For children under 13, Communication Safety and Screen Distance are turned on by default. The Web Content filter is set by default to Limit Adult Websites for children under 13. (This age varies by country or region.)

Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. On your device, go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Scroll down and select a family member below Family.

3. To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in Schedule time away from the screen.

   If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.

4. To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in Set limits for app use.

5. To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times.

   Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

6. To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia or eyestrain, turn on Screen Distance.

You can also do any of the following for a family member:

- Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases

- Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

- Check for sensitive images

Check for nude content on a family member's iPhone

You can have your family member's iPhone detect nudity in images before they're sent or received in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article About Communication Safety on your child's Apple device.

Note: For children under 13 in a Family Sharing group, Communication Safety is turned on by default.

1. On your device, go to Settings ⦿ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Scroll down and tap the name of your family member.

3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

   You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings ⦿ [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security. See Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPhone.

Block adult content on a family member's device

When you set up a child account, you enter the child's name and birthday after tapping Create Child Account. The child's age automatically determines the content they can access. You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by manually limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings ⦿ [ALT N/A] > Screen Time.

2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

3. Choose specific content and privacy options.

   • To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Audio, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.)

   • To restrict access to specific apps or features, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps & Features, then turn them off. To allow them, turn them on.

4. Tap ‹ [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple Account to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

Related

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPhone

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPhone

Set up Screen Time on iPhone

Accessories

NAV TITLE: Charging cable

Charging cable for iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Connect iPhone to a power outlet using the included cable and a compatible power adapter.

Your iPhone includes one of the following charging cables:

USB-C Cable
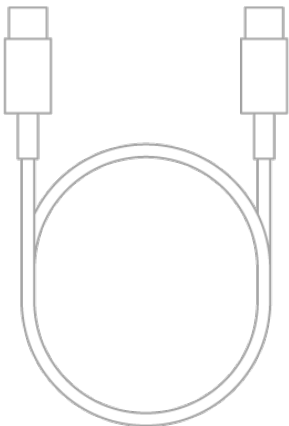
[Alt text: The USB-C Cable.]

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

USB-C to Lightning Cable
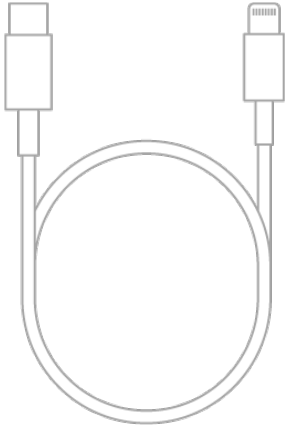
[Alt text: The USB-C to Lightning Cable.]

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter (sold separately) and the included cable. You can also connect the included cable to your computer's USB-C port for charging, transferring files, and more.

NAV TITLE: Power adapters

Power adapters for iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Connect iPhone to a power outlet using a compatible power adapter and charging cable.

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using its charging cable (included) and a compatible power adapter (sold separately).

You can use the following Apple USB power adapters to charge iPhone. The size and style may vary depending on the country or region.

Apple 20W USB-C power adapter
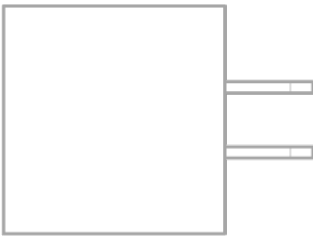
[Alt text: The Apple 20-watt USB-C power adapter.]

Note: For fast charging, iPhone 12, iPhone SE (3rd generation), and later models require a power adapter with a minimum power output of 20 watts, such as the Apple 20W USB power adapter. If you use a third-party power adapter, it should meet these recommended specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase

- *Line Voltage:* 100 to 240 VAC

- *Output Voltage/Current:* 9 VDC/2.2 A

- *Minimum Power Output:* 20 W

- *Output Port:* USB-C

Apple 18W USB-C power adapter
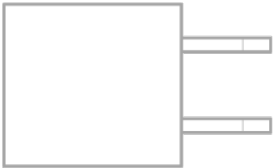
[Alt text: The Apple 18-watt USB-C power adapter.]

Apple 5W USB power adapter
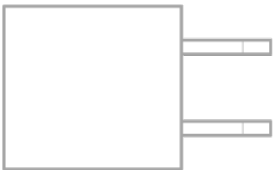
[Alt text: The Apple 5-watt USB power adapter.]

You can also use Apple USB power adapters for iPad and Mac notebooks to charge iPhone, and you can use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards.

Related

"Charging" in Important safety information

Apple Support article: About Apple USB power adapters

Apple Support article: Fast charge your iPhone

MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Wirelessly charge iPhone using MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger. You can also extend the battery life using MagSafe Battery Pack.

On supported models, MagSafe chargers and battery packs snap to the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The magnets ensure proper alignment for fast wireless charging, and you can hold and use iPhone while it's charging.

Without the magnetic alignment, MagSafe chargers can also charge other iPhone models and AirPods. (AirPods and MagSafe chargers, battery packs, cases, and sleeves are sold separately.)

Charge iPhone or AirPods with MagSafe Charger

1. Connect MagSafe Charger to power using a compatible power adapter (sold separately).
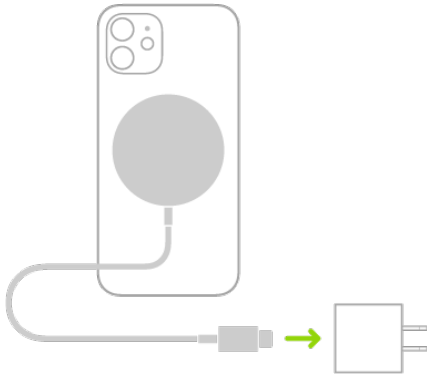
    [Alt text: An illustration showing one end of MagSafe Charger attached to the back of iPhone and the other end connecting to a power adapter.]

2. Do one of the following:

    - *iPhone:* (supported models) Place MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

      Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Charger on the back of iPhone.

    - *Other iPhone models:* Place iPhone face up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger, [Alt text: the Battery Charging icon] appears in the status bar.

- *AirPods 2, AirPods 3 (MagSafe), AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of MagSafe Charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Charger.

Charge iPhone or AirPods and Apple Watch with MagSafe Duo Charger

With MagSafe Duo Charger, you can charge your iPhone or AirPods at the same time you charge your Apple Watch. (MagSafe Duo Charger, Apple Watch, and AirPods are sold separately.)
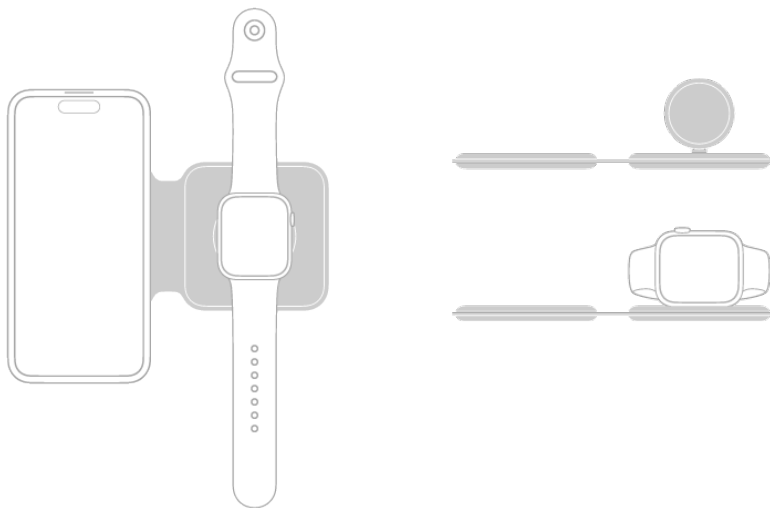
[Alt text: An illustration on the left shows iPhone and Apple Watch placed flat on the charging surfaces of MagSafe Duo Charger. An illustration at the top right shows the Apple Watch charging surface is raised. An illustration below it shows Apple Watch placed on the raised charging surface.]

1. Connect MagSafe Duo Charger to power using the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (sold separately).
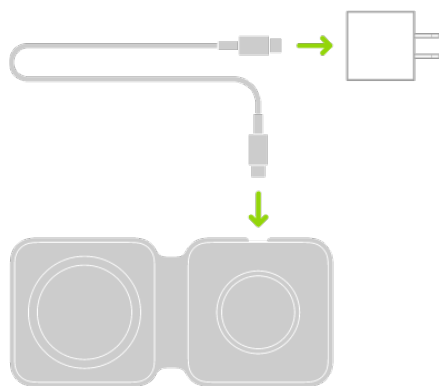
[Alt text: An illustration showing one end of a cable connecting to a power adapter and the other end connecting to MagSafe Duo Charger.]

2. To charge iPhone or AirPods, do one of the following:

- *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. Supported models help you align iPhone with the charger, and the charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging. On other models, the battery charging indicator appears when you properly align iPhone with the charging surface. Unless your iPhone is in Silent mode, you hear a chime when charging begins.

  Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing iPhone on MagSafe Duo Charger.

- *AirPods 2 (with Wireless Charging Case), AirPods 3, AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the iPhone charging surface. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

3. To charge Apple Watch, do one of the following:

   - With the Apple Watch charging surface lying flat and the Apple Watch band open, place Apple Watch face up on the charging surface.

   - With the Apple Watch charging surface raised, place Apple Watch on its side with its back against the charging surface. Apple Watch automatically goes into Nightstand mode, so you can also use it as an alarm clock.

   The concave charging surface magnetically snaps to the back of your Apple Watch and aligns it properly. When charging begins, a charging symbol appears on the watch face.

Charge iPhone with MagSafe Battery Pack

MagSafe Battery Pack magnetically attaches to supported models and extends the battery life.

Note: If iPhone Leather Wallet is attached, remove it before placing MagSafe Battery Pack.

- *Charge your iPhone on the go:* Place MagSafe Battery Pack on the back of iPhone or its MagSafe case or sleeve. The charging symbol appears when iPhone starts charging.

- *See the battery status of MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* Check the Batteries widget in Today View or on the Home Screen. See
Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen.

- *Charge MagSafe Battery Pack and iPhone:* With MagSafe Battery Pack on iPhone, connect either device to power using the USB-C to Lightning Cable or USB-C Cable and the Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or another compatible power adapter (minimum power output of 20 watts; sold separately). The status indicator on MagSafe Battery Pack is amber while charging, then turns green when charging is complete.

  Note: By default, charging is limited to 90 percent to optimize the lifespan of MagSafe Battery Pack. To remove the charging limit, open Control Center, tap Low Power Mode, then tap Charge past 90%.

  You can also charge MagSafe Battery Pack without iPhone.

See the Apple Support article How to use your MagSafe Battery Pack.

Related

"Charging" in Important safety information
Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Charge iPhone using a Qi-certified wireless charger.

You can wirelessly charge iPhone using a Qi-certified charger (sold separately). You can also use a Qi-certified charger to charge AirPods.

Charge iPhone or AirPods with a Qi-certified charger

1. Connect the charger to power. Use the power adapter that came with your charger or a power adapter recommended by the manufacturer.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *iPhone:* Place iPhone face up on the center of the charger. When iPhone is aligned properly with the charger, ⚡ [Alt text: the Battery Charging icon] appears in the status bar.

   - *AirPods 2 (with Wireless Charging Case), AirPods 3, AirPods 4 (with Active Noise Cancellation), and AirPods Pro:* Place your AirPods in the charging case, close the lid, then place the case with the status light facing up on the center of the charger. When the case is aligned properly with the charger, the status light turns on for several seconds, then turns off while continuing to charge.

See the Apple Support articles How to wirelessly charge your iPhone and Charge your AirPods and learn about battery life.

Related

MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

AirPods and EarPods

Use AirPods with iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer FaceTime calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders, and more.

After you pair AirPods with iPhone, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPhone, make and answer calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.

2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.

3. Do one of the following:

   - *AirPods (1, 2, 3, and 4) and AirPods Pro:* Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.

   - *AirPods Max:* Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPhone.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

   Note: If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article If your AirPods won't connect.

Do more with AirPods and your iPhone

See the AirPods User Guide for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

Related

Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone

Use EarPods with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use the headset to listen to music and videos and to make calls.

You can use EarPods (sold separately) to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.
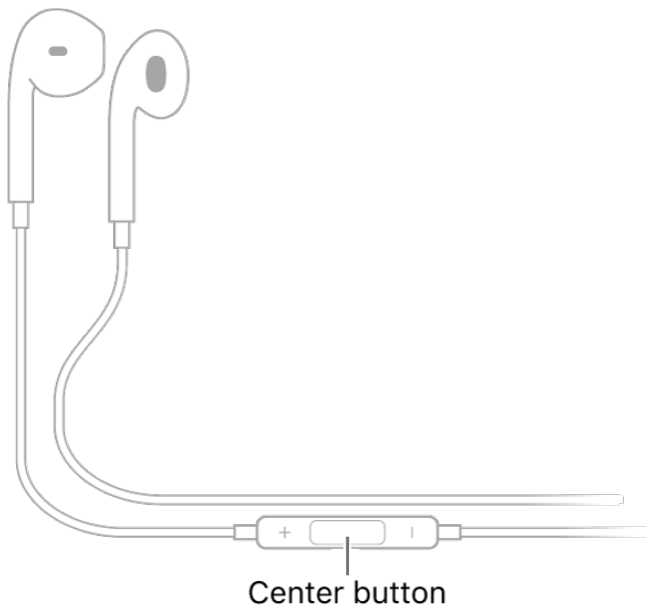
Center button

[Alt text: Apple EarPods; the center button is located on the cord leading to the earpiece for the right ear.]

Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.

- *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.

- *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.

- *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.

- *End the current call:* Press the center button.

- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See Use Siri on iPhone.

Related

Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Metadata
NoIndex

Pair Apple Watch with iPhone

On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app ⬛ [ALT N/A] , then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide.
(Apple Watch sold separately.)

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock your iPhone (models with Face ID) when you're wearing a face mask (watchOS 7.4 or later required).

Note: On all iPhone 12, iPhone 13, iPhone 14, iPhone 15 models, and iPhone 16 models, it's not necessary to use Apple Watch to unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask. See Set up Face ID on iPhone.

To allow Apple Watch to unlock your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Scroll down, then turn on Apple Watch (below Unlock with Apple Watch).

   If you have more than one watch, turn on the setting for each one.

To unlock your iPhone while you're wearing your Apple Watch and a face mask, raise iPhone or tap its screen to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

Note: To unlock your iPhone, your Apple Watch must have a passcode, be unlocked and on your wrist, and be close to your iPhone.

Work out with Apple Fitness+

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPhone, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.)

See Apple Fitness+ at a glance in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide.

Note: With Fitness on iPhone, you can view your active calories and steps, set a move goal, track your progress, and see your movement trends over time—even if you don't have an Apple Watch. See Track your daily activity and change your move goal in Fitness.

Collect health and fitness data from Apple Watch

Apple Watch can send data about your health and fitness to iPhone for you to view in Health. Apple Watch can also send notifications about high heart rates, low heart rates, loud environmental sounds, and more to your iPhone.

See Track important health information in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Send video and photos from iPhone to Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPhone.

Note: To stream videos or photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from your iPhone, both devices must be on the same Wi-Fi network.

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app [ALT N/A] or another supported video app on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the controls.

2. Tap ⬜ [Alt text: the AirPlay button] , then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.
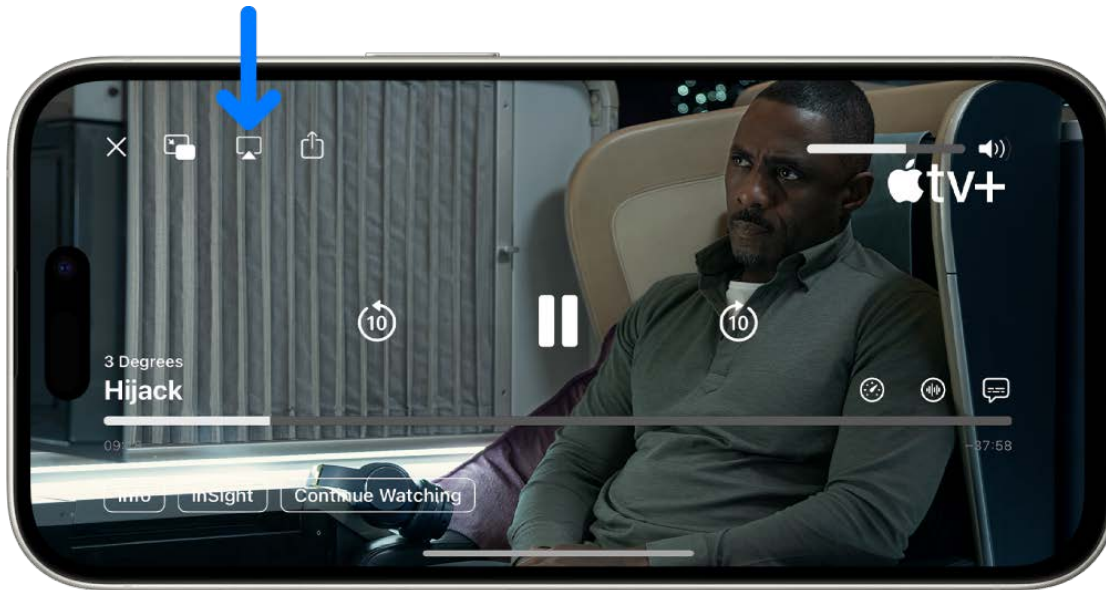
[Alt text: A movie playing on the iPhone screen. In the middle of the screen are the playback controls. The AirPlay button is near the top left.]

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPhone screen.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. Go to the Photos app 🌸 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap a photo, then tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Share button] .

3. Swipe up, tap ⬜ [Alt text: the AirPlay button] , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To stop streaming photos, tap ⬜ [Alt text: the AirPlay button] near the top of the iPhone screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.

2. Tap 🔲 [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button] , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

   If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

   To switch back to iPhone, open Control Center, tap 🔲 [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button] , then tap Stop Mirroring.

   Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

   To learn more about using Apple TV, see the Apple TV User Guide.

Related

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay
Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

NAV TITLE: Connect to a display with a cable

Connect iPhone to a display with a cable

> Metadata
> Summary: With the appropriate cable or adapter, connect your iPhone to a display, like a TV, projector, or computer monitor.

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a secondary display, like a computer monitor, TV, or projector.

1. Depending on your iPhone model, plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter, Lightning to VGA Adapter, USB-C Display AV Adapter, or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.

2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.

3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the monitor, TV, or projector.

4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the monitor, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

The adapters have an extra port so you can connect the charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a monitor, TV, or projector.

NAV TITLE: HomePod and other wireless speakers

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

> Metadata
> Summary: Stream audio wirelessly from iPhone to AirPlay 2-enabled devices and Bluetooth devices.

You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. Open an audio app such as Podcasts 🎙 [ALT N/A] or Music 🎵 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Choose an item to play.

3. Tap 📡 [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] , then choose a playback destination.

   - COMMENT - #ba #music
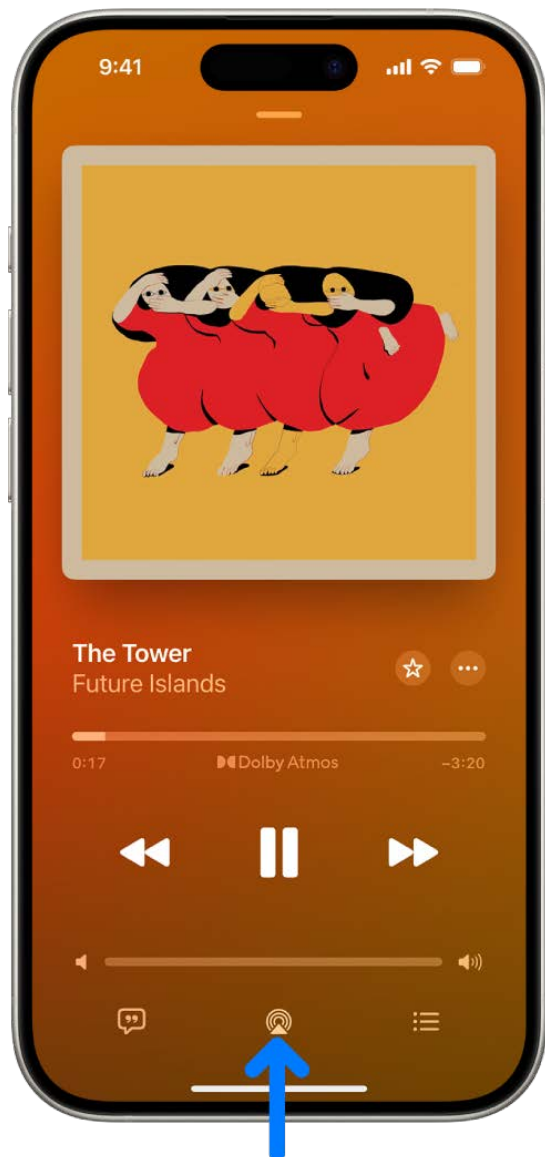
[Alt text: The playback controls for Music, including the Playback Destination button at the bottom of the screen.]

Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap ⓐ [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory.

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"

- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"

- "What's playing in the kitchen?"

- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"

- "Add the living room speaker"

- "Remove the music from the kitchen"

- "Move the music to the den"

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Tap ⊚ [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you're listening to.

2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio handoff has the following requirements:

- You must be signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- On your iPhone, you've turned on Wi-Fi and Handoff.

- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.

- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity.

Note: To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the HomePod User Guide and Apple TV User Guide.

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the Home accessories website.

Related

Play audio from your iPhone on a Mac or TV
Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Magic Keyboard

Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use Magic Keyboard (including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad) to enter text.

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth®.

Pair Magic Keyboard

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.

3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See Unpair a Bluetooth accessory.

- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.

- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device name, then click Remove.

Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone

Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

Related

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone
Commands for dictating text on iPhone

Enter characters with diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, enter accent characters and other diacritical marks while using Magic Keyboard.

If your Magic Keyboard doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key on Magic Keyboard to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:

   - Add or remove a keyboard for another language that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, switch to that language keyboard.

     For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, press and hold the Control key on Magic Keyboard, then press the Space bar until you select Español (México).

   - Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then choose an alternative keyboard layout that supports diacritical marks.

     For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

   For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

   - *Acute accent* (for example, *é*): Option-E.

   - *Grave accent* (for example, *è*): Option-`.

   - *Tilde* (for example, *ñ*): Option-N.

   - *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, *ü*): Option-U.

   - *Circumflex* (for example, *ê*): Option-I.

3. Press the letter.

For example, to enter *ñ* using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.

Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ǔ in lǔxíng ("travel"), press Option-V, then type a *v*. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ [Alt text: the Eject key] on Magic Keyboard.

2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.

   For example, to enter é, touch and hold the *e* key.

3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.

4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, press ⏏ [Alt text: the Eject key] on Magic Keyboard.

Related

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Magic Keyboard and iPhone, switch between the language keyboards, an emoji keyboard, and the onscreen keyboard.

With Magic Keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.

2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and any keyboards you added for typing in different languages.

Show or hide the onscreen keyboard

To show the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ [Alt text: the Eject key] on Magic Keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press ⏏ [Alt text: the Eject key] again.

Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

You can dictate text instead of typing it on Magic Keyboard.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard, turn on Enable Dictation, then choose a dictation shortcut.

2. To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then press the dictation shortcut key twice.

3. To use Magic Keyboard again, quickly press the dictation shortcut key twice.

As you speak to insert text, iPhone automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, "mind blown emoji" or "happy emoji").

Related

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Use shortcuts on Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

You can perform searches and use text replacements from anywhere on iPhone without taking your hands away from Magic Keyboard.

- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.

  Note: You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

- *Use text replacements:* You can set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type "omw" to enter "On my way!" See Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone.

- *Choose additional accessibility keyboard shortcuts:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See Control iPhone with an external keyboard.

Related

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Choose an alternative layout for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, choose a layout that allows you to enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard.

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on Magic Keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and enter diacritical marks for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.

2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

Related

Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone

Change typing assistance options for Magic Keyboard with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

You can change Magic Keyboard options for autocorrection, autocapitalization, and more.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.

- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.

- *Turn "." Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.

- *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

Related

[Switch between keyboards with Magic Keyboard and iPhone](#)

External storage devices

Connect external storage devices to iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, use files stored on USB storage devices and SD cards.

You can use the Files app and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPhone.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPhone using a compatible connector or adapter.

   You may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

Note: An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

   • *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

     Note: You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See Import and export photos and videos on iPhone.

   • *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

   • *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPhone.

Note: External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPhone. If an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, and your iPhone has a USB-C connector, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPhone has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

Related

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories

> Metadata
> Summary: Connect your iPhone to Bluetooth accessories such as headphones, speakers, game controllers, keyboards, and more.

Connect your iPhone to Bluetooth® accessories to stream music and videos, play games, connect to keyboards, and more.

Pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory

1. Put your Bluetooth accessory in discovery mode. If you aren't sure how to make it discoverable, check the instructions that came with your accessory.

2. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth and make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

3. Tap the name of the accessory when it appears onscreen, below the devices list.

You might need to enter the accessory PIN or passcode. Check the instructions that came with your accessory.

Note: iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth accessory to pair.

If you have trouble pairing your accessory, see the Apple Support article If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone or iPad.

Unpair a Bluetooth accessory

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth.

2. Tap ⓘ [Alt text: the Info button] next to the accessory you want to unpair, then tap Forget This Device.

3. Tap Forget Device to confirm.

If you don't see the devices list, make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

Note: If you unpair AirPods, they're automatically unpaired from other devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account.

Disconnect from all Bluetooth accessories

If you need to quickly disconnect your iPhone from all Bluetooth accessories and devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap ✳ [Alt text: the Bluetooth button] . Your Bluetooth accessories and devices disconnect from your iPhone until the next day.

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on Airplane Mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

Related

Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory
Connect a game controller to iPhone
Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone
Apple Support article: If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device

Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth accessory

Metadata
Summary: Use iPhone to play audio on a Bluetooth accessory.

After you connect your iPhone to a Bluetooth accessory, you can play and control the audio from your iPhone on the accessory.

Play audio from your iPhone on a Bluetooth audio accessory

1. Open an audio app such as Music or Podcasts on your iPhone and play an item.

2. Tap ⊚ [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] , then tap your Bluetooth accessory.

   While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

3. Use the controls on your iPhone to pause or play the audio, adjust volume, skip tracks, and more.

The playback destination returns to your iPhone if you move the Bluetooth accessory out of range.

Note: For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPhone, see Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone.

Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth accessories and devices

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the Bluetooth device type (such as headphone, speaker, or car stereo) on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then tap ⓘ [Alt text: the Actions Available button] next to the name of the accessory or device.

2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

Related

Connect iPhone to Bluetooth accessories
Use AirPods with iPhone

Print from iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Use AirPrint on iPhone to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, Safari, and Freeform.

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

Note: Your iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article About AirPrint.

Choose an AirPrint-enabled printer

After confirming that your printer supports AirPrint and that your iPhone and printer are on the same Wi-Fi network, do the following:

1. Open the app you want to print from.

2. Tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Share button] , ••• [Alt text: the More button] , ↩️ [Alt text: the Reply button] , or ⌄ [Alt text: the Actions Menu button] (depending on the app).

3. Tap Print, tap No Printer Selected, then choose an AirPrint-enabled printer.

Print a document

1. Open the app you want to print from.

2. Tap ⬆️ [Alt text: the Share button] , ••• [Alt text: the More button] , ↩️ [Alt text: the Reply button] , or ⌄ [Alt text: the Actions Menu button] (depending on the app).

3. Tap Print. (If you don't see Print, swipe up.)

See the status of a print job

Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

Related

View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi

Use iPhone with iPad, Mac, and Windows devices

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

Metadata
Summary: When your iPhone and other devices are near each other, use Continuity features to share and stream content, answer calls, and more across devices.

With Continuity, you can use your iPhone together with your iPad, Mac, and Apple Watch to work smarter and move seamlessly between your devices.

What is Continuity?

Continuity is the way that your Apple devices work together. There are many Continuity features that allow you to easily work across your Apple devices, without ever missing a beat. There's no specific Continuity app—it's built into the operating system and many apps you use every day. You just need to be signed in to the same Apple Account on your Apple devices. Many features also require that you have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

There are minimum system requirements for Continuity features; see the Apple Support article System requirements for Continuity features on Apple devices.

Share content between devices

You can easily share content between your devices, whether it's copying text from an iPhone and pasting on your Mac, sharing a file from your iPad to your iPhone, or handing off tasks between them.

Quickly share photos, videos, contacts, and anything else, with anyone near you—wirelessly. AirDrop makes sharing to iPhone, iPad, and Mac as simple as dragging and dropping. See Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices.

Or if you want to add a photo, video, or other item directly from one device into a specific app on the other device, you can simply drag and drop it between iPhone and Mac in either direction using iPhone Mirroring. See Use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac.

[Alt text: An iPhone Home Screen showing an AirDrop message at the top.]

Copy text, images, photos, and videos on one Apple device and then paste the content on another Apple device with Universal Clipboard. For example, you can copy a recipe from Safari on your iPhone, then paste it into Notes on your nearby Mac. See Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices.

Start a document, an email, or a message on one device and pick up where you left off on another device. Handoff works with apps like Mail, Safari, Maps, Messages, Reminders, Calendar, Contacts, Pages, Numbers, and Keynote. See Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices.

Use your iPhone on your Mac with iPhone Mirroring

iPhone Mirroring allows you to use iPhone from your nearby Mac. See Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring.

Receive iPhone Notifications on your Mac

iPhone Mirroring allows you to receive iPhone Notifications on your Mac. See Receive iPhone Notifications on your Mac.

Answer calls, send texts, and share your internet connection

Make it easy to stay connected when you set up your Mac or iPad to receive calls and text messages and share the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

Relay calls from your iPhone to your Mac or iPad, as well as send and receive texts. You can also hand off a FaceTime call from one device to another, so if you start a call on your iPhone and want to continue it on a larger screen, it's easy to transfer the call to your Mac. See Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac.

Your Mac or iPad (and other devices) can connect to the internet using the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone when they're within range of each other—no setup is required. Your iPhone automatically appears in the Wi-Fi status menu—just select it to connect to the internet. See Share your internet connection from your iPhone with Personal Hotspot.

Stream content to a larger screen

Want to see it on the big screen? Share, play, or present videos, music, photos, and more from your iPhone to your Mac. You can also stream content from iPhone to your Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled TV. See Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay.

Use your iPhone camera with your Mac

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as your Mac computer's webcam or microphone. You can also use video effects when using your iPhone as a webcam, like Portrait mode or Center Stage. See Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac.

With the camera on your iPhone, you can take a picture or scan a document with your iPhone and have it appear instantly on your Mac. (You can also use Markup tools on an image or draw a sketch on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac.) See Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac.

You can also use your iPhone camera when you make a FaceTime call on Apple TV. See Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

Related

Apple Support article: Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch

NAV TITLE: Use your iPhone from your Mac

Use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring

Metadata
Summary: Remotely use your iPhone from your Mac with iPhone Mirroring.

iPhone Mirroring allows you to use iPhone from your nearby compatible Mac. While being remotely used on your Mac, iPhone remains locked.

Note: Some iPhone features such as camera and microphone aren't compatible with iPhone Mirroring. In addition, only one Continuity feature can be used at a time (such as Continuity Camera or iPhone Mirroring).

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Your iPhone has iOS 18 or later and your Mac has macOS Sequoia or later.

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- Both devices are near each other and you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Handoff.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If iPhone Mirroring is not available in your country or region, iPhone Mirroring tells you that it's unable to connect to your iPhone for that reason.

Use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac

1. Go to the iPhone Mirroring app [ALT N/A] on your compatible Mac.

   Note: Your iPhone must be nearby to use iPhone Mirroring.

2. Enter your device passcode, then choose one of the following:

   - *Ask Every Time:* Receive a prompt for Touch ID or your device passcode each time you use iPhone Mirroring.

   - *Authenticate Automatically:* Automatically connect to iPhone Mirroring without needing to authenticate.

3. Interact with your iPhone using the iPhone Mirroring app window.

   To rearrange your Home Screen apps or widgets, secondary click any app, then click Edit Home Screen.

Transfer files using iPhone Mirroring

You can transfer files, photos, videos, and more between your Mac and iPhone in supported apps using iPhone Mirroring. To transfer a file, simply drag and drop it between your Mac and the iPhone Mirroring app window in either direction.

Choose the iPhone that your Mac uses

If you have more than one iPhone that is both signed in to your Apple Account and nearby, you can choose the one that your Mac uses for mirroring and iPhone notifications.

1. Choose Apple menu [ALT N/A] > System Settings, then click Desktop & Dock in the sidebar.

2. Choose your iPhone from the iPhone pop-up menu on the right. This menu appears just below the "Use iPhone widgets" setting. It appears only when your Mac detects more than one nearby iPhone that can be used for mirroring.

Remove Mac computers from iPhone Mirroring

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General.

2. Tap AirPlay & Continuity, then tap iPhone Mirroring.

   iPhone Mirroring settings are available after connecting to a Mac with iPhone Mirroring.

3. Tap Edit in the top right, then select a Mac to remove.

Related

Receive iPhone Notifications on your Mac

Receive iPhone Notifications on your Mac

> Metadata
> Summary: Receive your iPhone Notifications forwarded to your Mac.

iPhone Notifications on Mac forwards your iPhone notifications to your Mac so you don't miss them. You can receive notifications for every app, or just the apps you choose.

Set up iPhone Notifications on your Mac

To set up iPhone Notifications on Mac, first connect to iPhone Mirroring. See Use iPhone Mirroring on your Mac.

Note: iPhone Mirroring and iPhone Notifications require an iPhone with iOS 18 or later and a Mac with macOS Sequoia or later. Both devices must be near each other and signed in to the same Apple Account.

Choose which apps send notifications to your Mac

1. On your iPhone go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications.

2. Choose any app, then turn Show on Mac on or off.

Related

NAV TITLE: Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices

Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use AirDrop to wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a Mac, iPhone, or iPad near you.

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac. You can use AirDrop to send files to your own devices or to share files with others.

You can use AirDrop with an iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Transfers are encrypted for security, and the recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives.

Note: If you leave Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range after an AirDrop transfer is initiated, the transfer continues over the internet.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If you want to use AirDrop to send items between your Apple devices, sign in to your Apple Account in order to automatically accept and save the items.

Turn on AirDrop

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap ⦿ [Alt text: the AirDrop icon] . Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

  Note: The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with minimum system requirements for AirDrop.

- *On a Mac:* Click ▤ [Alt text: the Control Center status menu] in the menu bar, then click ⦿ [Alt text: the AirDrop icon] . When it's blue, it's on.

  To choose who can send items to you, click the right arrow next to AirDrop, then click Contacts Only or Everyone.

Send an item using AirDrop

To send an item to someone with AirDrop, both you and your recipient must have turned on AirDrop and chosen to accept items from either Contacts or Everyone. If a recipient chooses to only accept items from a contact, you must be in their contacts list and they need to have your Apple Account email address or phone number included in your contact card.

Then do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open the item, then tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Share icon] , Share, ⦿ [Alt text: the AirDrop icon] , or another button (depending on the app). Tap ⦿ [Alt text: the AirDrop icon] , then tap the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

  Tip: If you're within close range of someone in your contacts, you can initiate an AirDrop transfer by opening the file you want to share, then moving your iPhone close to your contact's iPhone (on supported models with iOS 17 or later).

- *On a Mac:* Open the item on a Mac, click ⬆ [Alt text: the Share icon] in the toolbar, then click AirDrop. Select the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.

  Tip: You can also share items with AirDrop in the Finder. Go to the Finder, click AirDrop in the sidebar, then drag the item you want to share to the recipient you want to send it to.

To use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see Use passwords on iPhone.

Receive items with AirDrop

On your device, tap or click Accept on the AirDrop notification.

Most items are saved in the app that they're sent from. For example, if you use AirDrop to send a photo from the Photos app, it's saved in the Photos app on the other device.

Depending on the device, you might find your files in other places. On an iPhone or iPad, some items may be saved in the Files app. On a Mac, some items are automatically saved in the Downloads folder. You may also have the option to choose where to save items.

Note: If you opened AirDrop in the Finder on a Mac, the notification to accept or decline appears here, rather than in Notification Center.

If you send items from one of your Apple devices to another (for example, from your Mac to your iPhone), and you're signed in to iCloud using the same Apple Account on both devices, the item is automatically accepted and saved.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Turn off cellular data for AirDrop

Cellular data charges may apply when you use AirDrop.

If you don't want to use cellular data when you're out of Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range, go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then turn off Use Cellular Data.

Typically this is a one-time setting, but you might want to change it if, for example, you're traveling and want to avoid roaming charges.

If AirDrop isn't working

- Make sure that both the sender and recipient have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on and that you're both using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

- Check that the recipient has their AirDrop settings set to receive from Everyone or Contacts Only.

- If you're having difficulty getting AirDrop to work, restart your device and try again.

- For additional support, see the Apple Support articles How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad and Use AirDrop on your Mac.

To quickly share your contact information, see Use NameDrop on iPhone.

AirDrop is best for sharing a small selection of files between devices. If you want to share many files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud.

Related

Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you
How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices

Metadata
Summary: Use Handoff on iPhone to continue working on one device where you left off on another.

With Handoff, you can start a task on one device and complete it on another. For example, you can start an email on your iPhone but then finish it on your Mac computer's bigger screen.

You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Safari, Mail, FaceTime, and Maps. Some third-party apps also work with Handoff.

You can use Handoff between your iPhone, iPad, and Mac. You can also hand off tasks between your Apple Watch and iPhone.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Handoff.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Turn on Handoff

Turn on Handoff on both your iPhone and your other Apple device.

- *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Handoff.

- *On your Mac:* Choose Apple menu [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click General [ALT N/A] in the sidebar, click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices" on or off.

  Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click General, then select "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."

- *On Apple Watch:* Open the Apple Watch app on iPhone, go to My Watch > General, then turn on Enable Handoff.

Hand off a task between your iPhone and other devices

When your devices are near each other, an icon appears whenever a task can be handed off. Just tap or click the Handoff icon to continue working on your other device.

The Handoff icon appears in the following locations:

- *On an iPhone:* At the bottom of the App Switcher screen.

- *On an iPad:* At the right end of the Dock.

- *On a Mac:* Toward the right end of the Dock, if the Dock is at the bottom of the screen. If you set up the Dock to appear on the left or right side of your screen, the Handoff icon appears at the bottom of the Dock.

Hand off a task from your Apple Watch

If you have an Apple Watch, you can hand off tasks from certain apps on your Apple Watch to your iPhone. To learn more, see Handoff tasks from Apple Watch.

If Handoff isn't working

- Make sure that both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

- Check that your app supports Handoff. Calendar, Contacts, FaceTime, Keynote, Mail, Maps, Pages, Numbers, Reminders, and Safari, as well as many third-party apps, allow Handoff.

Tip: When Handoff is on, you can use Universal Clipboard to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

Related

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices

Metadata
Summary: Use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy content on your iPhone, then paste it on another iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac computer, and vice versa.

With Universal Clipboard, you can copy content from one of your Apple devices and paste it on another. For example, you can copy text on your iPad and paste it into a note on your iPhone, or copy an image from a Safari webpage on your iPhone and paste into an email message on your Mac.

You can use Universal Clipboard with your iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff turned on.

- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Universal Clipboard.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Copy and paste between your iPhone and other devices

Universal Clipboard isn't a feature that you see, but it behaves just like copy and paste does on your iPhone, except with Universal Clipboard, when you paste, you can do so on one of your other Apple devices, like an iPad or a Mac.

1. Select the text or image on your iPhone, then tap Copy.

2. On your other device, either tap (on another iPhone or an iPad) or place the pointer (on a Mac) where you want to paste the text or image, then tap or click Paste. You can also use keyboard shortcuts.

    For more information on how to copy or paste on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad or How to copy and paste on a Mac.

    Note: When you copy the content, it's available on your Clipboard for a short amount of time.

How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad

- *Select and copy text:* Double-tap with one finger to select a word or triple-tap with one finger to select a paragraph. (You can also move the grab points to adjust your selection.) Then tap Copy.

- *Select and copy an image:* Touch and hold to select an image, then tap Copy.

- *Paste text or an image:* Tap where you want to paste the text or image, then tap Paste.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone and Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad.

How to copy and paste on a Mac

- *Select text or an image:* With your pointer, select the text or image you want to copy.

- *Copy text or an image:* Press Command-C or choose Edit > Copy from the menu bar.

- *Paste text or an image:* Move your pointer where you want to paste the text or image, then press Command-V, or choose Edit > Paste from the menu bar.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone and Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad.

If Universal Clipboard isn't working

- Make sure that you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff turned on.

- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.

- If you're having difficulty getting Universal Clipboard to work, restart your devices and try again.

Universal Clipboard is best for sharing small selections of text or copied images between devices. If you want to share multiple files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud.

NAV TITLE: Stream video and audio from your iPhone

Stream video and audio from your iPhone with AirPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use a nearby Mac to watch videos, view photos, and play audio streamed from your iPhone.

With AirPlay, you can stream video and audio from your iPhone to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror what's on your iPhone screen.

You can use AirPlay with your iPhone and a Mac, an Apple TV, or another TV.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi turned on and are connected to the same network.

- If you're streaming between your own Apple devices, it's useful to sign in to the same Apple Account.

- To use AirPlay to stream content to a Mac, both devices meet minimum system requirements.

- To use AirPlay to stream content to a TV, make sure you're using Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPhone

1. On a Mac, choose Apple menu > System Settings, click General in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down), then click AirDrop & Handoff.

   Note: If you're using a Mac with macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Sharing.

2. Turn on AirPlay Receiver.

3. Click the pop-up menu next to "Allow AirPlay for" and choose the devices that can use AirPlay to stream content to this Mac.

   - *Allow only your devices:* If you only want to allow AirPlay from devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, select "Current user."

   - *Allow any device:* Select "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone.

   To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password.

Stream photos or videos from your iPhone to your Mac or TV

You can stream photos and videos from your iPhone to a Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

1. On your iPhone, find the photo or video that you want to stream.

2. Tap ▭ [Alt text: the AirPlay button] .

   Note: In some apps, you might need to tap a different button first. For example, in the Photos app, tap ⬆ [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap AirPlay.
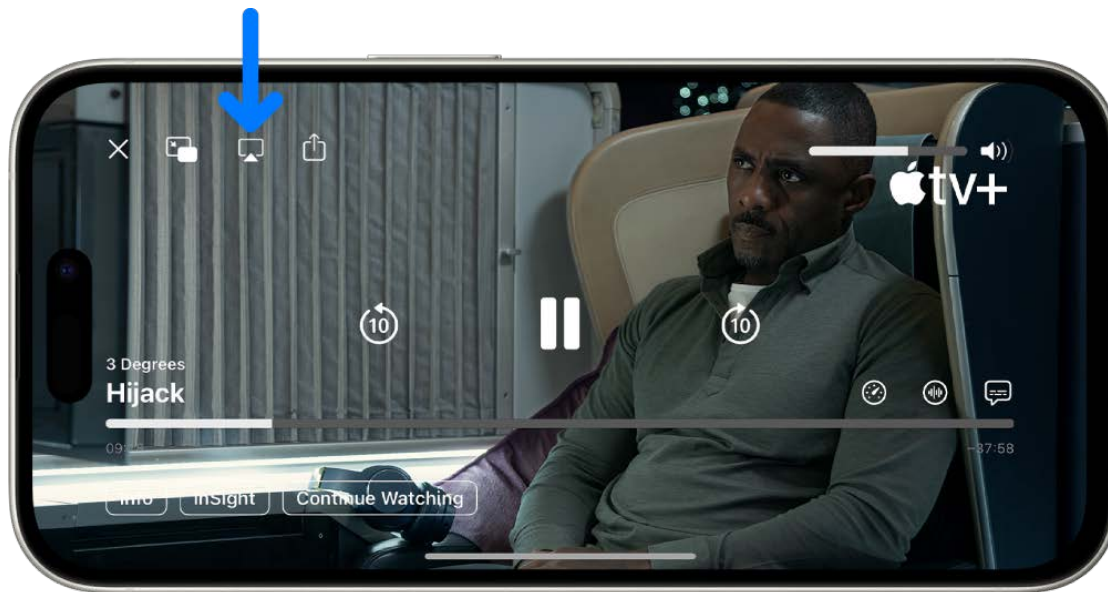
[Alt text: A movie playing on the iPhone screen. In the middle of the screen are the playback controls. The AirPlay button is near the top left.]

3. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.

4. To show playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.

5. To stop streaming, on your iPhone, tap AirPlay in the app you're streaming from, then tap your iPhone on the list.

   Note: You can set up your iPhone to discover and automatically connect to any Apple TV or smart TV that you use frequently when you play content from apps that you use regularly with AirPlay. To turn this feature on or off on your iPhone, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Share your iPhone screen on a Mac or TV

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⬚ [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button] , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

   To switch back, open Control Center, tap ⬚ [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button] , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Play audio from your iPhone on a Mac or TV

You can use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a Mac or TV. If you're streaming to your Mac, make sure you've set up the Mac to allow streaming from another device first. See Allow streaming from another device.

1. Open an audio app (such as Podcasts or Music) on your iPhone, then choose an item to play.

2. Tap 🔘 [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] , then choose a playback destination.
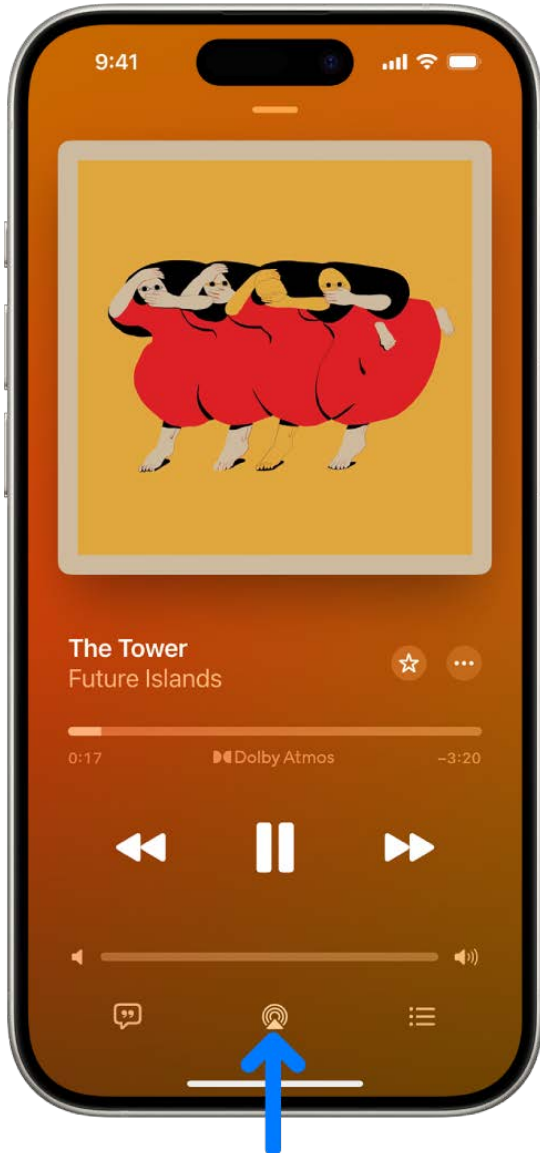
[Alt text: The playback controls for a song, including the Playback Destination button at the bottom of the screen.]

You can also use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPhone to a HomePod. To learn more, see Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device.

Use AirPlay in your hotel room

If you stay in a hotel room with a TV that supports AirPlay, you can use it to play movies, TV shows, music, and more from your iPhone.

1. Open Camera 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. If it's not already on, turn on the room's TV and locate the AirPlay QR code.

3. Scan the QR code with your iPhone camera, then follow the onscreen instructions to connect to your hotel Wi-Fi (if you're not already connected) and the room's TV.

4. Use your iPhone to display content on the TV screen by streaming photos or videos, mirroring your screen, or playing audio. Choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.

5. To stop streaming or mirroring, tap the AirPlay or Screen Mirroring button ([Alt text: the AirPlay button] or [Alt text: the Screen Mirroring button]) on your iPhone, then tap your iPhone in the list or tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: AirPlay in hotels isn't available in all countries or regions.

If AirPlay isn't working

- Make sure that both of your devices are on the same network.

- Check that your Mac is set up to allow streaming from another device.

- See the Apple Support article If screen mirroring or streaming isn't working on your AirPlay-compatible device.

Related

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

Mac User Guide: Set up your Mac to be an AirPlay receiver

Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad and Mac

Metadata
Summary: Make and receive phone calls or send and answer text messages on your iPad and Mac by relaying calls through your iPhone.

You can relay phone calls and text messages through your iPhone to your iPad or Mac, so it's easy to stay in touch no matter what device you're on.

Use your iPhone to make and receive phone calls or messages on your iPad, Mac, or another iPhone.

Note: Cellular charges may apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- FaceTime is set up on your iPhone, as well as the other device that you want to use for calls or text messages. See Get started with FaceTime on iPhone, Get started with FaceTime on iPad, and Sign in to or out of FaceTime on Mac.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Set up your iPhone to allow phone calls on your other devices

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Cellular.

   Note: If your iPhone has Dual SIMs, choose a line (below SIMs).

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices you want to allow to make and receive calls.

     The devices you choose can make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone, connected to Wi-Fi, and signed in to the same Apple Account.

   - Tap Wi-Fi Calling, turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

     Other devices can make and receive calls over Wi-Fi, even when they're not near your iPhone, as long as they're signed in to the same Apple Account.

3. On your other devices, do the following:

   - *On your iPad or another iPhone:* Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime, then turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices.

   - *On your Mac:* Open FaceTime, choose FaceTime > Settings, then select Calls from iPhone. If an Upgrade to Wi-Fi Calling button appears, click it, then follow the instructions.

   Note: If you turn on Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls can be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information can be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers might use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

Make or receive phone calls on your iPad or Mac

After you set up your iPhone to allow calls on your other devices, you can make and receive phone calls on your iPad and Mac.

- *Make a call:* On your iPad or Mac, tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, tap or click New FaceTime, then enter a contact or phone number.

  If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* On your iPad or Mac, swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

Stop receiving phone calls on your iPad

If you no longer want to receive phone calls on your iPad, you can turn off the option on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime on your iPhone.

2. Turn off Allow Calls on Other Devices.

Stop receiving phone calls on your Mac

If you no longer want to receive phone calls on your Mac, you can turn off Calls from iPhone.

1. Go to the FaceTime app 📹 [ALT N/A] on your Mac.

2. Choose FaceTime > Settings, then click General.

3. Turn off Calls from iPhone.

If you no longer want to receive FaceTime calls on your Mac, you need to sign out of FaceTime. See Sign in to or out of FaceTime on Mac.

Send and receive messages on your iPad or Mac

You can send and receive messages—both iMessage and SMS/MMS messages—on your iPad or Mac. For more information on iMessage and SMS/MMS messages, see What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS

To send and receive iMessages on iPad, see Set up iMessage on iPad. To send and receive iMessages on Mac, see Set up iMessage on Mac.

To send and receive SMS/MMS messages on your iPad and Mac, see Access your messages on all your Apple devices.

In addition to making and receiving phone calls on your iPad or Mac, you can also use Handoff to transfer a FaceTime call from one device to another. See Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPad to your other Apple devices for iPad and Move a FaceTime call to another device for Mac.

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling.

Share your internet connection from your iPhone with Personal Hotspot

Metadata
Summary: **Share a cellular internet connection from iPhone.**

You can share the internet connection from your iPhone with other devices using a feature called Instant Hotspot. Instant Hotspot uses your iPhone device's Personal Hotspot, and is useful when your other device doesn't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

There are several ways to connect other devices to your Personal Hotspot:

- Connect your other device to your iPhone through Wi-Fi settings.

- Pair your two devices with Bluetooth®.

- Connect your other device to your iPhone with a cable.

You can share the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone with another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and more.

Note: Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.

- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Instant Hotspot.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

If you're sharing your Personal Hotspot with your Apple devices, it's faster to connect if you sign in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

Note: You can only use Personal Hotspot by sharing your iPhone device's cellular internet connection. You can't connect your iPhone to a Wi-Fi network, and then share that network with another device.

Set up Personal Hotspot on iPhone

On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Personal Hotspot, then tap Allow Others to Join.

Optionally, you can change the Wi-Fi Password. Your Wi-Fi network name is your device name, which you can change in Settings > General > About.

If you set up your iPhone to use two SIMs, Personal Hotspot uses the line you select for cellular data. See Set up Dual SIM.

Note: If Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

Turn Personal Hotspot on and off on iPhone

On your iPhone, open Control Center. Tap 🔗 [Alt text: the Personal Hotspot icon] to make your Personal Hotspot discoverable.

You can choose who is allowed to use your Personal Hotspot, set a password, and—if you're in a Family Sharing group—decide if you want to automatically share your Personal Hotspot with specific family members.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Wi-Fi

You can connect another device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Wi-Fi settings. You can connect another iPhone, an iPad, a Mac, a Windows device, and many other devices that are able to connect to a Wi-Fi network.

1. On the device that you want to connect to your iPhone device's Personal Hotspot, do any of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap 📶 [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom to open Control Center. Tap 📶 [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.

   - *On an iPad:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap 📶 [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPhone.

   - *On a Mac:* Click 📶 [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Status menu] in the menu bar, then choose your iPhone.

   - *On a Windows device or other device:* Follow the manufacturer's instructions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.

2. Enter the password you set up for your Personal Hotspot to connect. If you're connecting another Apple device and you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices, you don't need to enter a password.

   Note: When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, a blue band appears at the top of your iPhone screen, and 🔗 [Alt text: the Personal Hotspot icon] appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

When you're not using using the hotspot, your devices automatically disconnect to save battery life.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Bluetooth

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using Bluetooth instead of Wi-Fi. Both devices must have Bluetooth turned on.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu > System Settings, then click Bluetooth in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)

   Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Bluetooth.

2. On your iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth to make it discoverable.

3. On your Mac, select your iPhone when it appears. (It may take a moment.)

As soon as it's connected by Bluetooth, your Mac is able to use your iPhone device's cellular connection.

To connect your Windows device to your iPhone using Bluetooth, follow the manufacturer's directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with a USB cable

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPhone using the USB cable that came with your iPhone (or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and other device).

Note: If you see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

As soon as it's connected by a cable, your Mac or Windows device is able to use your iPhone device's cellular connection.

If your Personal Hotspot isn't working

- Make sure that your devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.

- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.

- See the Apple Support article If Personal Hotspot is not working on your iPhone or iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular) for additional troubleshooting steps.

- Maximize compatibility in Settings > Personal Hotspot, then enable Maximize Compatibility. Maximize Compatibility may reduce performance for devices connected to your Personal Hotspot when turned on.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See Set up Family Sharing on iPhone.

Related

Apple Support article: If Personal Hotspot is not working

Apple Support article: About the 'Trust This Computer' alert

Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac

> Metadata
> Summary: With Continuity Camera, use your iPhone as a webcam or microphone for your Mac or Apple TV 4K, and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and video effects.
> NoIndex

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPhone as your Mac webcam or microphone, and take advantage of the powerful iPhone camera and additional video effects. You can connect wirelessly, or with a USB cable for a wired connection.

You can use your iPhone as a webcam with Continuity Camera on an iPhone and Mac.

You can also use your iPhone as a webcam when making a FaceTime call on Apple TV. To learn more, see Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- The devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Set up your iPhone for Continuity Camera

1. Mount your iPhone using an iPhone-compatible mount or stand in landscape orientation. It must be near your Mac (within 30 feet) in a stable position, with its rear camera facing you.

2. To turn on Continuity Camera on iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Continuity Camera.

Continuity Camera works wirelessly, though you can also use Continuity Camera by connecting your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable. You can use the cable that came with your iPhone or another cable that matches the ports on your iPhone and Mac.

Note: If you connect your iPhone and Mac with a cable and see an alert on your iPhone that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

Use your iPhone as a webcam for Mac

1. On your Mac, open any app that has access to the camera or microphone, like FaceTime or Photo Booth. You can also use this feature with many third-party apps that access the camera or microphone.

2. In the app's menu bar or settings, choose your iPhone as a camera. The location of these settings can vary depending on the app. See Choose an external camera on Mac for guidance on where to find these settings.

   Your iPhone begins streaming audio or video from the rear camera to your Mac.

3. To control video or audio, do any of the following:

   - *Pause the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Pause. You can also unlock your iPhone to pause video or audio by swiping up.

   - *Resume the video or audio:* On your iPhone, tap Resume. You can also resume by locking your iPhone.

   - *Stop using your iPhone as a webcam or microphone:* On your Mac, quit the app.

     Note: If you need to charge your iPhone while Continuity Camera is turned on, use a USB cable for best results.

While streaming video or audio, you can move your iPhone and change its orientation. Remember, however, that for best results, keep your iPhone mounted and in landscape orientation.

When using your iPhone as a webcam, you can use video effects like Portrait mode and Center Stage. See Use video conferencing features on Mac.

Turn on Desk View

You can use Desk View and other video effects when you're using an app that supports video and have set up your iPhone as a webcam.

1. On your Mac, do either of the following:

   - *FaceTime:* Start your video call, then click the Desk View button in the top-right corner of the video window.

   - *Other apps that support video:* Click 🟢 [Alt text: The Video button] in the menu bar, then click the Desk View button.

   Desk View opens, which mimics an overhead camera and shows a top-down view of your desk.

2. Use the Desk View setup window on your Mac to align your desk with the camera. To zoom in or out, drag the onscreen control at the bottom of the window. When you're ready to share your desk view on the video call, click Share Desk View.

   Note: To share what's on your desk in a third-party app, use the app's screen sharing feature to select the Desk View window for sharing. To find out how, see the developer's instructions or explore the app's menus and settings.

3. To turn off Desk View, click 🔲 [Alt text: The screen mirroring button] in the top left of the Desk View window, then choose Close Window.

Use your iPhone as a microphone for your Mac

You can use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac that doesn't have a built-in or external microphone.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu > System Settings, then click Sound in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)

2. Select your iPhone in the list of sound input devices.

   Note: In order to use your iPhone as a microphone on a Mac, the iPhone must be in landscape orientation and stationary, with its screen turned off.

Remove your iPhone as a webcam or microphone option for your Mac

On your iPhone, tap Disconnect, then confirm that you want to disconnect. Your iPhone is removed from the camera and microphone lists in apps, and also from the list of sound input devices in Sound settings.

To reconnect your iPhone as a webcam or microphone, connect it to your Mac with a USB cable, then follow the steps to use your iPhone as a webcam or use your iPhone as a microphone for your Mac.

If Continuity Camera isn't working

- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.

- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another and, for best results, your iPhone should be mounted and in landscape orientation.

- Connect your iPhone to your Mac with a USB cable and check again. (If it's already connected with a cable, disconnect and reconnect it.) If your iPhone asks you to trust the computer or your Mac asks you to allow the accessory, be sure to give permission.

- Make sure that you aren't using another Continuity feature, such as iPhone Mirroring.

- Check that your devices meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera.

- See If you need help for Continuity Camera for additional troubleshooting steps.

Related

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices
Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPhone on Mac

Metadata
Summary: You can take a photo, scan a file, and mark up a document using your iPhone and iPad and have it appear instantly on your Mac.
NoIndex

With Continuity Camera and Continuity Sketch, you can draw a sketch, take a photo, or scan a document using your nearby iPhone and have it appear instantly on your Mac, exactly where you need it—for example, in an email, note, or folder. You can also mark up a file on your Mac with your iPhone using Continuity Markup.

You can use Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup with your iPhone and a Mac.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® turned on.

- You're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- Both devices meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup.

If you're using a VPN, make sure its configuration does not prevent local networking as that may interfere with some Continuity features.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

Insert a sketch, photo, or scan from your iPhone

You can draw a sketch on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Sketch, or take a photo or scan a document on your iPhone and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Camera.

1. On your Mac, Control-click where you want to insert the sketch or photo—for example, in an open window, like a note or email message.

   You can also Control-click the desktop or a folder in a Finder window.

2. Choose Import from iPhone, then choose Add Sketch or Take Photo.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Add a sketch:* On your iPhone, draw a sketch using your finger.

   - *Take a photo:* On your iPhone, take the photo, then tap Use Photo or Retake.

   - *Scan a document:* On your iPhone, take the scan. Your iPhone detects the edges of the document and autocorrects any skewing of the image. If you want to adjust the area included in the scan, drag the frame or its edges. When you're ready, tap Keep Scan or Retake. You can continue to scan documents until you're done, then tap Save.

   On your Mac, the sketch, picture, or scan appears in the location you chose in step 1. If you added it from the desktop or a folder, it appears as a file.

Note: Scans you take on your iPhone aren't saved on the device.

Use your iPhone to mark up a file on your Mac

Use your iPhone to add text, make drawings, rotate, and crop images, PDF documents, and more on your Mac, called Continuity Markup.

1. On your Mac, open the Finder.

2. Select the file you want to mark up, then press the Space bar to open a preview window.

3. Click Ⓐ [Alt text: The Markup button] in the toolbar.

4. Click the Annotate button, then use the Markup tools to draw, add text or shapes, use the magnifier, and more.

5. When you're done, tap Done on your iPhone.

6. To save your changes, click Done on your Mac.

If Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, or Continuity Markup isn't working:

- Make sure you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

- Make sure that both devices have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.

- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet of one another.

- Make sure your device meets minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera.

Related

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

NAV TITLE: Start SharePlay instantly

Start SharePlay by holding two iPhone devices close together

> Metadata
> Summary: Use SharePlay on iPhone to stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with a nearby friend.

With SharePlay, you can instantly stream supported content, listen to music, play games, and more in sync with a friend by holding your iPhone close to your friend's iPhone.

Start SharePlay

1. On your iPhone, in an app that supports SharePlay, tap the content you want to share.

2. Hold your iPhone next to the iPhone of the person you want to share with.

   If they're not in your contacts (or vice versa), you first need to share your contact information with them. See Use NameDrop on iPhone.

3. Tap SharePlay.

   The person you want to share with can accept or decline your SharePlay invitation.

Note: iOS 17 or later is required on both iPhone devices. AirDrop must be turned on, and the sender and recipient must be included in each other's contacts. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, each participant must have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay might not support sharing some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions.

Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable

> Metadata
> Summary: Directly connect iPhone and a Mac or Windows device with a cable to charge iPhone, sync content, and more.

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPhone to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a Windows device with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPhone, connect iPhone to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

Note: If an alert appears on your iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).

After you connect your iPhone to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- [Set up iPhone](#) for the first time.

- [Share your iPhone internet connection](#) with your computer.

- [Update iPhone](#) using your computer.

- [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your Mac and iPhone.

- [Sync or transfer files](#) between your PC and iPhone.

The iPhone battery charges when iPhone is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

Transfer files between your iPhone and computer

Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer

> Metadata
> Summary: There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and computer.

There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPhone and computer.

- *Quickly transfer files wirelessly*: See
  Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices.

- *Use iCloud*: See Automatically keep your files up to date with iCloud.

- *Use an external storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox*: See
  Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud.

- *Use a cable*: For Mac, see Sync files from your Mac to iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch. For Windows devices, see Transfer files between your Windows device and devices with iTunes.

Important: Transferring, sharing, or syncing may be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

Related

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPhone
Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

Transfer files wirelessly between your iPhone and computer with email, messages, or AirDrop

> Metadata
> Summary: Use Mail, Messages, or AirDrop to transfer files wirelessly between your iPhone and computer.

Use email to transfer files

- To transfer files using Mail on your iPhone, see Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone and Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone.

- To transfer files using Mail on your Mac, see Add attachments to emails in Mail on Mac and Save email attachments in Mail on Mac.

Use text messages to transfer files

- To transfer files using Messages on your iPhone, see Send an item using AirDrop.

- To transfer files using Messages on your Mac, see Send photos and videos in Messages on Mac.

Use AirDrop to transfer files

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your iPhone, see Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices.

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your Mac, see Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you.

Files sent to your iPhone are located in the app where you saved the file or in the app that opens automatically when the file is received. Files sent to your Mac are located in the app where you saved the file or in the Downloads folder.

Transfer files or sync content between your iPhone and computer with the Finder or iTunes

Metadata
Summary: Using the Finder or iTunes, connect your iPhone and computer to sync many types of data and transfer many types of files.

You can connect your iPhone to a computer to do the following:

- Transfer files used by iPhone apps that support file sharing.

- Sync supported content like movies and podcasts.

Depending on your computer, you use either the Finder or iTunes on your computer to transfer files and sync content.

Transfer files for supported apps

You can transfer files by copying them from one device to another using the Finder or iTunes. Only files from iPhone apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *To transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See the Apple Support article Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone.

- *To transfer files with your Windows device or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iOS or iPadOS device.

Sync supported content

Syncing with the Finder or iTunes keeps supported content up to date between your iPhone and computer. For example, you can set up syncing so that when you add a movie to your iPhone, it also appears on your computer. After you set up syncing between your devices with a cable, you can set them to sync wirelessly and automatically whenever they're connected to the same Wi-Fi network.

You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, podcasts, photos, contacts, and calendars.

- *To sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad in the Mac User Guide.

- *To sync content with your Windows device or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article Use iTunes to sync your iPhone or iPad with your computer.

If the files you want to share between your iPhone and computer aren't supported by syncing or transferring with the Finder or iTunes, see Transfer files between your iPhone and your computer for other options.

NAV TITLE: Automatically keep files up to date with iCloud

Automatically keep your files up to date on your iPhone and computer with iCloud

> Metadata
> Summary: Use iCloud on iPhone and your computer, keep your files up to date on both devices.

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to iCloud appears on all devices that are signed in.

You can also access your information in iCloud from anywhere by using a supported web browser. See System requirements for iCloud.

Important: OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be signed in to your Apple Account on both your iPhone and your computer, along with any web browsers you might be using.

Set up iCloud on your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > [*your name*].

   If you don't see your name, tap Apple Account, enter your email address or phone number, then enter your password.

2. Tap iCloud, then turn on items you want to keep there.

[Alt text: The iCloud settings screen showing the iCloud storage meter and a list of apps and features that can be used with iCloud.]

   For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your computer.

Set up iCloud on your Mac

1. Follow the instructions to set up iCloud features on Mac in the Mac User Guide.

2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone.

Set up iCloud on your Windows device

1. Follow the instructions to set up iCloud in the iCloud for Windows User Guide.

2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPhone, then click Apply.

iCloud comes with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can subscribe to iCloud+.

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. iCloud might not be available in all areas, and iCloud features might vary by area. See the Apple Support article System requirements for iCloud. For information about features, go to apple.com/icloud/.

Related

Use iCloud on iPhone
iCloud for Windows User Guide
iCloud User Guide: Sign in and use iCloud.com

CarPlay

NAV TITLE: Intro to CarPlay

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Learn how CarPlay puts iPhone apps on your vehicle's built-in display so you can stay focused on the road.

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.
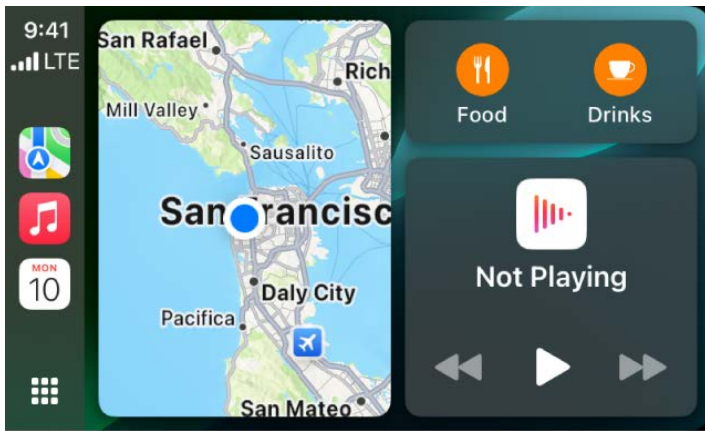
[Alt text: A CarPlay Dashboard showing Maps, Music, and Messages in the Sidebar. On the right is a map of Apple Park, a navigation window, and a now playing window.]

Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the CarPlay Available Models website) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Related

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

1. Start your car, then make sure Siri is on.

2. Connect your iPhone to your car:

   - *If your car supports CarPlay with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The USB port might be labeled with a CarPlay icon or a smartphone icon. Be sure to use an Apple USB Cable.

- *If your car supports CarPlay both wirelessly and with a USB cable:* Plug your iPhone into the USB port in your car. The next time you attempt to connect your iPhone to CarPlay, an alert on your iPhone allows you to connect wirelessly.

- *If your car supports only wireless CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel. Make sure that your stereo is in wireless or Bluetooth mode. Then on your iPhone, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, and make sure that Wi-Fi is also turned on. Tap the CarPlay network, and check that Auto-Join is turned on. Then, go to Settings > General > CarPlay, and select your car. Check your car manual for more information.

Note: After connecting to CarPlay on some electric vehicles, use the Maps app to identify the vehicle for EV routing. See Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone.

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.

If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.

[Alt text: the CarPlay icon]

Related

Use Siri to Control CarPlay

Use Siri to Control CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Use Siri to ask CarPlay for what you want.

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also use your car's built-in controls to control CarPlay.)

Use Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:

   - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.

   - Touch and hold ⚏ [Alt text: the Dashboard button] or ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.

- You can also say "Hey Siri" to activate Siri in supported vehicles.

2. Use Siri to ask a question or to do something.

   Siri: Say something like:

   - "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"

   - "Call Eliza Block"

   - "Play more songs like this one"

   - "Show me the map"

   - "What's my next meeting?"

   - "What's the weather for today?"

   - "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

Tip: Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you've stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See About Siri Suggestions.

Related

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

Use your vehicle's built-in controls to control CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls, for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad.

CarPlay works with your vehicle's built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner's guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also use Siri to control CarPlay.)

- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.

- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

  To go to CarPlay Home, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] , then press the knob.

  To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap ⦂⦂⦂ [Alt text: the Dashboard button] , or turn the rotary knob to select ⦂⦂⦂ [Alt text: the Dashboard button] , then press the knob.

- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.

- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.

- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See Use other apps with CarPlay.)

- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.

- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

Related

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Use CarPlay to find places, get directions, estimate your arrival time, and more.

Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

Note: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See Control the location information you share on iPhone.)
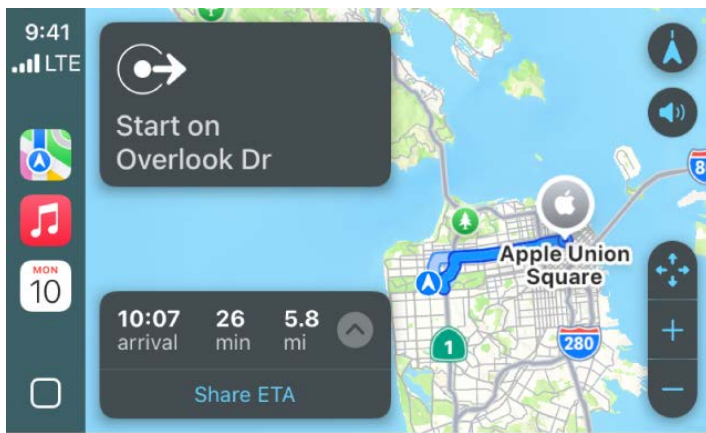
[Alt text: CarPlay showing Maps, Music, and Calendar in the Sidebar. On the right is a navigation route from Apple Park to Apple Union Station.]

Find a route

CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Find a gas station"

- "Give me directions home"

- "Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge"

- "Find a charging station"

- "Find coffee near me"

Learn how to use Siri

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:

   - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See Add places and notes to your library in Maps on iPhone.)

   - Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone.)

   - Select Search, then select 🎤 [Alt text: the Microphone button] to speak a search phrase, or select ⌨ [Alt text: the Keyboard button] to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.

2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle's controls to select the route you prefer.

3. To call your destination before you leave, select 📞 [Alt text: the Phone button] .

4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily find your way back to your vehicle.

Follow turn-by-turn directions

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *Add a stop to your driving directions:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Add Stop, then choose a destination or use Siri to search for one.

- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like "Stop navigating," or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.

- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Tap 🔊) [Alt text: the Volume button] , then choose 🔇 [Alt text: the Mute button] to mute all directions.

- *Mute turn-by-turn directions, except for alerts and hazards:* Tap 🔊) [Alt text: the Volume button] , then choose 🔊⚠ [Alt text: the Alerts Only button] .

- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like "Find a gas station." Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.

- *Share your ETA:* Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

  People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

  To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

Note: For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

Related

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

Report traffic incidents in CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: In CarPlay, report accidents, hazards, and speed checks.

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

Report an incident

Siri: Say something like:

- "Report an accident"

- "There's something on the road"

- "There's a speed check here"

Learn how to use Siri

Or with turn-by-turn directions showing, you can select 💬 [Alt text: the Report button] , then choose from one of the available options.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers for Accident, Hazard, and Road Work are displayed in Maps for other users.

Note: Speed checks are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

Incident markers show information about hazards ⚠️ [ALT N/A] and accidents 🛑 [ALT N/A] . When you're near their locations, you can report their status.

Siri: Say something like: "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." Learn how to use Siri.

Or, you can do the following:

1. Select the incident marker.

2. Select Cleared or Still Here.

    Note: You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its incident marker is removed from Maps.

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Apps > Maps, then tap "See how your data is managed."

Related

[Change the map view in CarPlay](#)

Change the map view in CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: In CarPlay, find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.
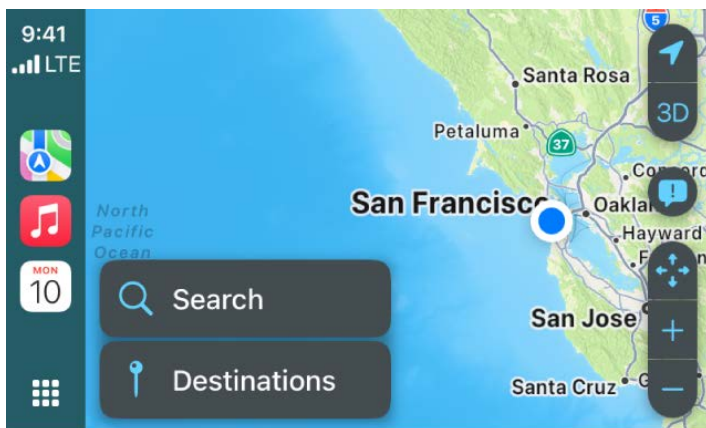
[Alt text: A CarPlay screen showing a map of San Francisco. On the right are location, 3D, report hazard, and zoom buttons. At the bottom are Search and Destination buttons.]

When you [follow turn-by-turn directions](#), you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select ⛰ [Alt text: the Detail button] . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select ⤴ [Alt text: the Overview button] .

- *Zoom in or out:* Select ➕ [Alt text: the Zoom In button] or ➖ [Alt text: the Zoom Out button] .

- *Scroll the map:* Select 🎮 [Alt text: the Scroll button] , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.

  On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap ◁ [Alt text: the Tracking Off button] . Your position is marked in the middle of the map.

- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.

- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap ◁ [Alt text: the Tracking On button] . To resume showing north at the top, tap ⌖ [Alt text: the Tracking On Heading button]

- *Zoom in or out:* Select ➕ [Alt text: the Zoom In button] or ➖ [Alt text: the Zoom Out button] .

- *Scroll the map:* Select ⊛ [Alt text: the Scroll button] , then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.

Related

[Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay](#)

Make and receive phone calls with CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

Siri: Say something like: "Call Eliza." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

Related

[Play music with CarPlay](#)

Play music with CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Use CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone.

Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that's available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

- COMMENT - #ba #music

Siri: Say something like:

- "Let's hear the Acoustic playlist"

- "Play 'You Need to Calm Down' by Taylor Swift"

- "Play more songs like this one"

- "Play the rest of this album"

- "Skip this song"

- "Repeat this song"

- "Shuffle this playlist"

- "Tune into ESPN Radio"

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

If Siri doesn't find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say "Play the radio station 'Pure Pop'" rather than saying "Play 'Pure Pop.'"

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

You can also play music together using SharePlay. See [Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPhone](#).

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.

(table aria-label=Buttons on the Now Playing screen)

Button	Description
⏸ [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause playback.
▶	Play the current song.

[Alt text: The Play button.]

[Alt text: The Next button.]	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
[Alt text: The Previous button.]	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.
[Alt text: The Shuffle button.]	Play songs in random order.
[Alt text: The Repeat button.]	Continually repeat the current song.
[Alt text: The More button.]	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

Related

Apple Music Classical User Guide

View your calendar with CarPlay

View your calendar with CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to view events, appointments, and meetings.

Siri: Say something like: "Do I have a meeting at 10?" or "Where is my 3:30 meeting?" Learn how to use Siri.

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.
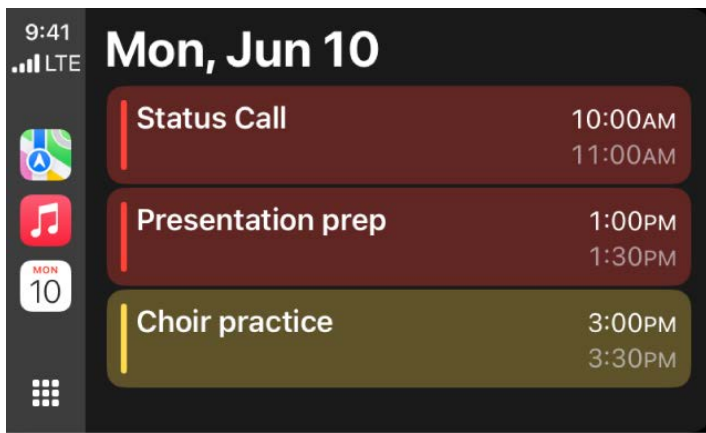
[Alt text: CarPlay showing Maps, Music, and Calendar in the Sidebar. To the right are events for Mon, June 5th for portfolio work session, leadership skills workshop, presentation prep, and choir practice.]

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.

Related

Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

NAV TITLE: Send and receive text messages

Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Text my wife"

- "Text Eliza Block I'm in traffic and I'll be 15 minutes late to the meeting"

- "Read my text messages"

Learn how to use Siri

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:

- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.

- *Start a new conversation:* Select ☑ [Alt text: the Compose button] .

- *Automatically send messages:* Skip the confirmation step when sending messages with Siri to send messages automatically, unless you ask to change or cancel it.

  In CarPlay, go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Siri > Messaging with Siri, then select Automatically Send Messages.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including incoming text messages with CarPlay.

Announce incoming text messages with CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use CarPlay to read your incoming text messages from your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to have Siri automatically read your incoming text messages and listen for your response.

- On your iPhone, go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Siri > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.

Note: You can also enable or disable Announce Messages directly in CarPlay by tapping Announce when Siri reads an incoming text message. See Have Siri announce notifications.

Related

Play podcasts with CarPlay

Play podcasts with CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

(table aria-label=Playback controls)

Button	Description
▶ [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play
❚❚ [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause
↺(15) [Alt text: The 15 Seconds Rewind button.]	Jump back 15 seconds
(30)↻ [Alt text: The 30 Seconds Fast Forward button.]	Jump forward 30 seconds
1× [Alt text: The Playback Speed button.]	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

Related

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

NAV TITLE: Play audiobooks

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.

- COMMENT - #ba #books

Siri: Say something like: "Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook" or "Rewind 15 seconds." Learn

[how to use Siri](#).

Or you can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

Related

[Listen to news stories with CarPlay](#)

Listen to news stories with CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories.

Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.)

You can use your vehicles's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

(table aria-label=Buttons on the News screen)

Button	Description
▌▌ [Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause playback.
▶ [Alt text: The Play button.]	Play the current story.
▶▶ [Alt text: The Next button.]	Skip to the next story.

15 Jump back 15 seconds.

[Alt text: The 15 Seconds Rewind button.]

1× Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

[Alt text: The Playback Speed button.]

Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website).

Related

Control your home from CarPlay

Control your home from CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: Use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories.

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or use Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Open the garage door"

- "Did I leave the garage door open?"

- "Close the garage door"

- "Lock the front door"

- "Turn on the lights"

- "Turn off the lights"

Learn how to use Siri

Related

Use other apps with CarPlay

Use other apps with CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Use other apps with CarPlay, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and third-party CarPlay apps.

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home"

- "Add milk to my grocery list"

- "Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow"

- "What's the weather for today?"

Learn how to use Siri

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps —including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can use Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

Note: Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use. When you're not actively navigating, or if you're navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

Related

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

Metadata
Summary: Change the order of icons displayed on CarPlay Home.

1. When you're not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Move an icon:* Drag ≡ [Alt text: the Reorder button] up or down in the list.

   - *Remove an icon:* Tap ⊖ [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the icon, then tap Remove.

     Only icons that have ⊖ [Alt text: the Delete button] next to them can be removed.

   - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Insert button] next to the icon.
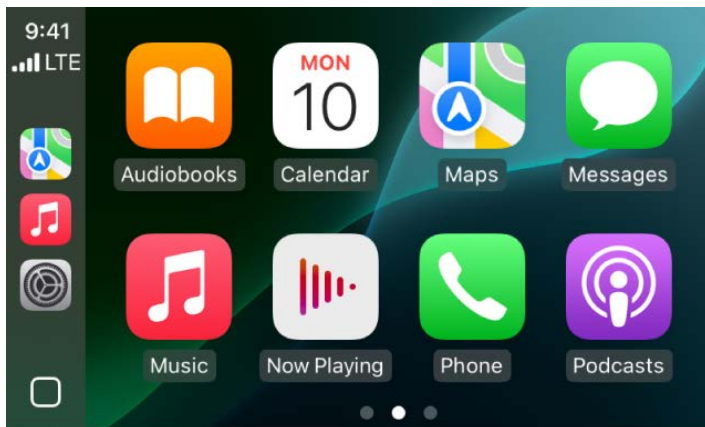
[Alt text: A CarPlay Home showing Maps, Music, and Messages in the Sidebar. To the right is Audiobooks, Calendar, Maps, Messages, Music, Now Playing, Phone, and Podcasts.]

Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.

Related

Change settings in CarPlay

Change settings in CarPlay

Metadata
Summary: Change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn off suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard, or turn on Do Not Disturb.

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Driving Focus, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.

Use the Driving Focus with CarPlay

The Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay and Driving Focus is on, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

   Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap ☐ [Alt text: the Home button] to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Go to Driving Focus, then select Activate With CarPlay.

If you receive a Driving Focus notification when you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger) you can turn it off—tap the notification, then tap "I'm not driving."

Switch the appearance of CarPlay

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

2. Select Appearance.

3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

Change the wallpaper in CarPlay

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

Hide or show album art

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.

Related

Play music with CarPlay

Accessibility

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Learn about iOS accessibility features that can help iPhone work best for you.

Customize iPhone in ways that work best for you with features for vision, hearing, mobility, speech, and cognitive accessibility—whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can turn on accessibility features when you set up your iPhone for the first time, or at any time in Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

Vision
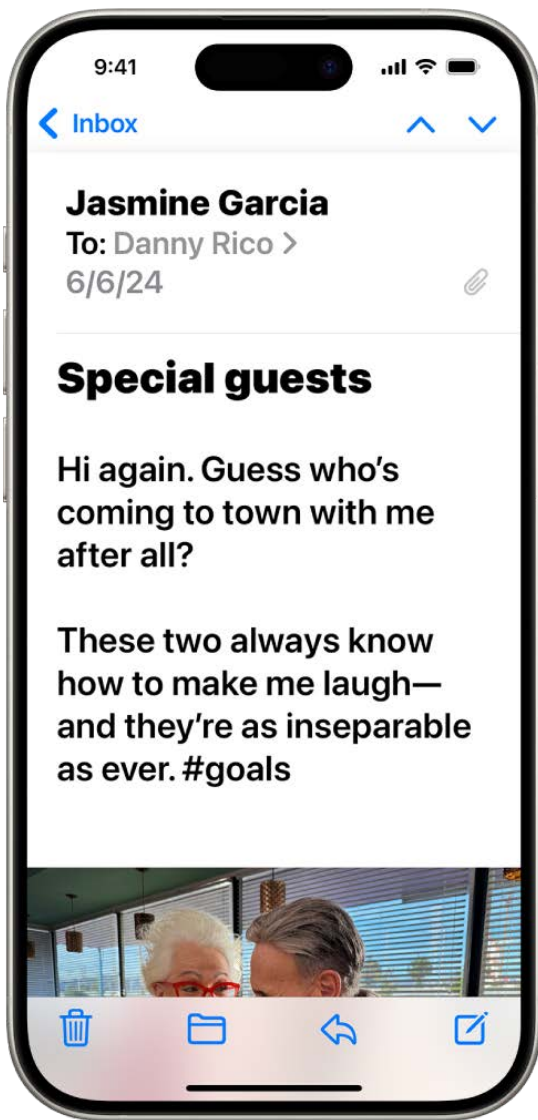
[Alt text: An iPhone with the Mail app open. An email is displayed with large, bold text.]

Use the built-in screen reader to hear what's on the screen and navigate iPhone with gestures. Or make text bigger, zoom in on the screen, adjust display colors, and more.

You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of your surroundings if you can't see them.

Learn more about accessibility features for vision

Mobility

[Alt text: An iPhone showing a number next to each item on the Home Screen. At the top of the screen, the Voice Control command "Show numbers" is displayed.]

Navigate and perform actions on iPhone using just your eyes or spoken commands. Or connect an assistive device or an external keyboard and use it to control iPhone.

You can also make it easier to use gestures and set other options so iPhone responds best to your touch.

Learn more about accessibility features for mobility

Hearing
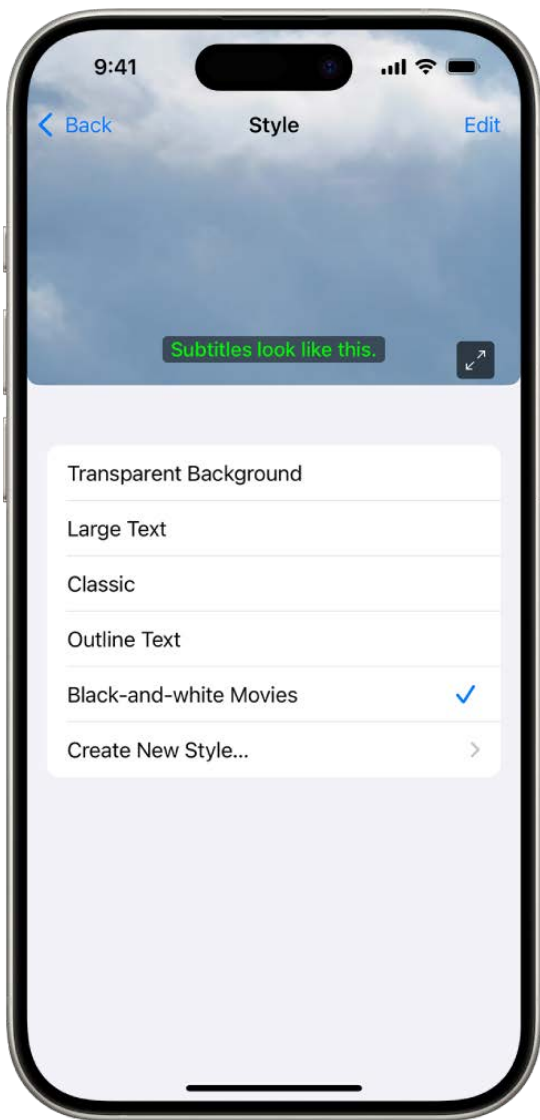
[Alt text: An iPhone showing an example of subtitles with a custom style.]

Get real-time captioning of spoken audio from an app or live conversation, turn on flash notifications, have iPhone recognize sounds, and more.

You can also pair hearing devices with your iPhone, and adjust headphone audio so it's right for you. Or experience songs as taps, refined vibrations, and other haptics that are synced to the rhythm of the music.

Learn more about accessibility features for hearing

Speech
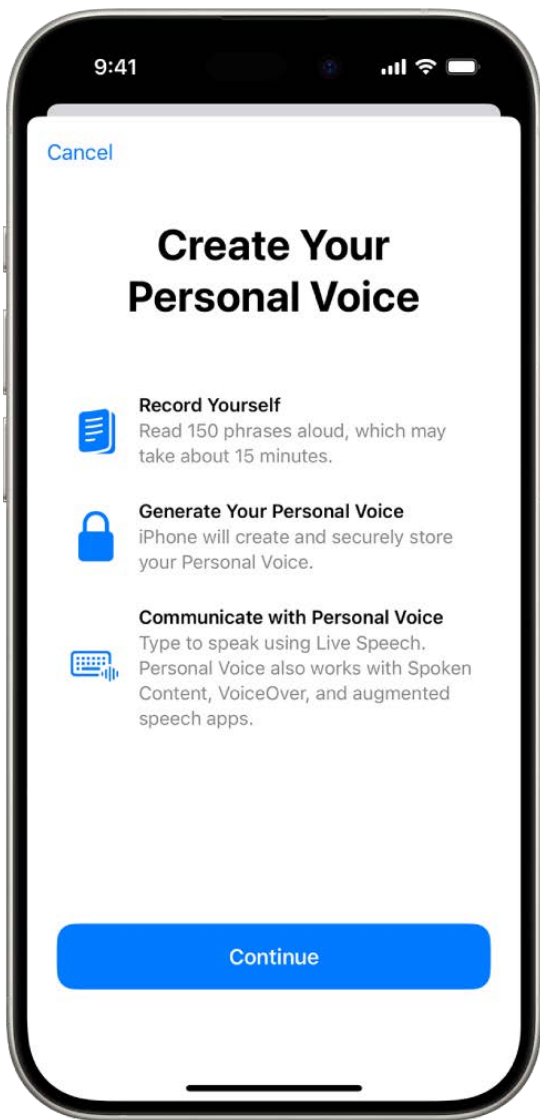
[Alt text: An iPhone with information about how to create a personal voice.]

Create a custom voice that sounds like you, or choose one of dozens of system voices, then use it to have what you type spoken out loud.

You can also have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns, or teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or sound of your choosing.

Learn more about accessibility features for speech

Cognitive
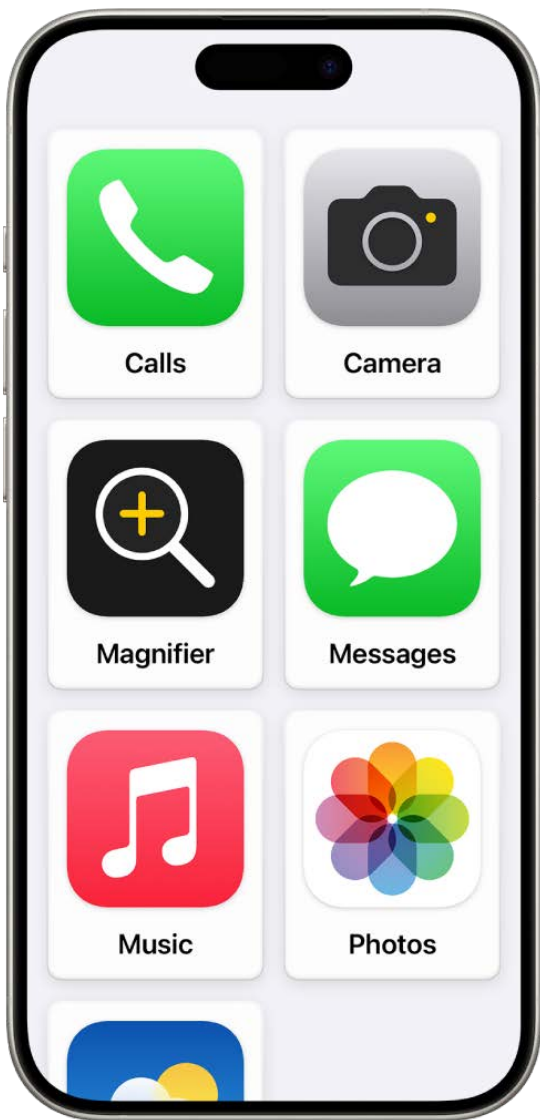
[Alt text: An iPhone showing the Assistive Access Home Screen with a large grid of apps.]

iOS accessibility features can help you—or someone you care for—use iPhone with greater independence. You can set up an iPhone with a simplified interface for someone with a cognitive disability, or temporarily lock iPhone to one app when you let a child use it.

Learn more about cognitive accessibility features

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with Siri, the click of a button, or from Control Center. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

Related

Apple Accessibility website

Apple Accessibility Support website

Get started

Setup basics

NAV TITLE: Use accessibility features during setup

Use accessibility features during iPhone setup

Metadata
Summary: Use VoiceOver, Zoom, and other vision- and mobility-related accessibility features as you turn on iPhone for the first time.

iPhone has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPhone, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPhone features.

Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPhone is turned on, triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver.

2. Do any of the following and more:

   - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.

   - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.

   - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.

   - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.

   - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor.

Note: When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See Use VoiceOver gestures and Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on.

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in VoiceOver settings.

Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.

2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap 🔵 [Alt text: the Accessibility Options button] to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- VoiceOver

- Zoom

- Display & Text Size

- Motion

- Spoken Content

- Touch (such as AssistiveTouch and Touch Accommodations, Switch Control, or any external keyboard.)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPhone with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See Turn on and set up your iPhone. (See Move from an Android device to iPhone if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

Related

Turn on and set up iPhone

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Change Siri accessibility settings on iPhone to best suit your needs.

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri listen for atypical speech patterns, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.

   - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.

- *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses. You can also change when Siri responds.

- *Use Siri even when iPhone is covered or facing down:* Turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri."

  To have Siri respond when iPhone is facing up, go to Settings > Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then turn on Listen for "Siri" or "Hey Siri."

- *Require "Siri" or "Hey Siri" in order to interrupt Siri:* Turn on Require "Siri" for Interruptions. This can be useful if you use VoiceOver or Voice Control and don't want VoiceOver speech or Voice Control commands to interrupt Siri.

To change how you activate Siri, see Set up Siri and Change when Siri responds.

Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.

   P9

   Note: If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max and Apple Intelligence is turned on, you can automatically type to Siri, so this option isn't shown. See Use Apple Intelligence with Siri.

2. To make a request, activate Siri, then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

Have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns

You can have Siri listen for atypical speech. This may be helpful if you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, such as cerebral palsy, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), or stroke.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Listen for Atypical Speech.

You can also teach iPhone to perform an action when you speak a word or make a sound of your choosing. See Use Vocal Shortcuts.

Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri announce notifications and calls from apps like Messages on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, when using CarPlay, and on MFi hearing devices.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.

2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

End calls with Siri

You can have Siri end phone and FaceTime calls.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

   Note: Available in select languages and on iPhone 11, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and later. Requires download of speech models.

2. To end a call, say something like: "Siri, hang up." (Participants on the call will hear you.)

You can also route and automatically answer calls or have Siri announce and answer calls.

Related

Use Siri on iPhone

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Change Siri settings on iPhone

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

NAV TITLE: Quickly turn accessibility features on or off

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking or pressing an iPhone button, tapping the back of iPhone, and more.

You can quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking or pressing an iPhone button or tapping the back of iPhone. You can also use Control Center, Siri, or Vocal Shortcuts.

Use the Accessibility Shortcut

Triple-click the side button or Home button to turn the accessibility features of your choice on or off.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you want.

   If you select only one feature, the feature is immediately turned on or off when you click the button shortcut.

2. Triple-click one of the following:

   - The side button (on an iPhone with Face ID)

   - The Home button (on other iPhone models)

   To have iPhone recognize a slower triple-click, see Adjust settings for the side or Home button.

3. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off (if Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

Note: To add some features—like Assistive Access or Guided Access—to the Accessibility Shortcut, you need to set them up first. You can use the Accessibility Shortcut to enter and exit Assistive Access, but you can't use it to turn on other features while Assistive Access is active. To use the Accessibility Shortcut while Guided Access is on, you must turn on Accessibility Shortcut in Guided Access settings.

Press the Action button

On supported iPhone models, you can press the Action button to open the Magnifier app or an accessibility feature of your choice. See Use and customize the Action button.

Tap the back of iPhone

You can double- or triple-tap the back of iPhone to open an accessibility feature of your choice. See Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts.

Use Control Center

You can add accessibility features to Control Center for quick access when you swipe from and edge of the screen.

1. To change the features available in Control Center, open Control Center, tap ＋ [Alt text: the Add button] in the top-left corner, then tap Add a Control.

2. Tap a control to add it to Control Center. Scroll down to see more controls, including categories of controls for accessibility, hearing, mobility, and vision.

You can change which features appear when you tap 🈂 [Alt text: the Hearing button] in Control Center. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Control Center, then add or remove features.

Use Siri

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off VoiceOver." Learn how to use Siri.

Use a Vocal Shortcut

You can teach iPhone to turn on an accessibility feature when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. See Use Vocal Shortcuts.

Related

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Vision

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Discover accessibility features for vision that make it easier to see or hear what's on your iPhone screen.

With built-in accessibility features for vision on iPhone, you can make it easier to see what's on the screen, or you can hear what's on the screen spoken out loud. You can even use your iPhone as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of what's around you if you can't see it.

To explore accessibility features for vision, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility. Vision features are at the top.

Hear what's on the screen

(table aria-label=Hear what's on the screen)

[ALT N/A]

Control iPhone with VoiceOver

Have the built-in screen reader speak what's on the screen. Navigate your iPhone with gestures, or with a connected keyboard or braille display.

Turn on and practice VoiceOver

[ALT N/A]

Speak onscreen text

Even if VoiceOver is off, have iPhone read all text on the screen, what you're typing, and more.

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

[ALT N/A]

Hear descriptions of video

Get spoken descriptions of visual content in movies, TV shows, and other media, when available.

Hear audio descriptions for video content

You can also have iPhone play sounds when you turn it on and off.

Tip: With Siri and Dictation, you can complete common tasks and enter text using just your voice.

Get information about your surroundings

(table aria-label=Get information about your surroundings)

[ALT N/A]

[ALT N/A]

Point at text and hear it spoken

Have iPhone read text on household appliances, ATMs, and more.

Read aloud text and labels around you

Hear about your surroundings

Hold up iPhone and get information about what your camera is pointed at, including when people, doors, or text are detected.

Get live descriptions of visual information around you

[ALT N/A]

Get a closer look

Use iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on items around you.

Magnify and examine objects around you

Make text and other onscreen content larger

(table aria-label=Make text and other onscreen content larger)

[ALT N/A]

[ALT N/A]

Zoom in

Enlarge what you're viewing—the entire screen or one part of it.

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Make text bigger and bolder

Adjust the reading size for text across iPhone apps and system features.

Make text easier to read

[ALT N/A]

Enlarge text as you type

Display a separate window with a larger version of the text that you're typing.

Use Hover Typing

If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can also show a larger version of text when you hover over it or make the pointer easier to see.

View what's on the screen more comfortably

(table aria-label=View what's on the screen more comfortably)

[ALT N/A]

[ALT N/A]

Reduce onscreen motion

Pause animated images, and slow down the motion of user interface elements. Or dim your display when media you're viewing depicts strobe or flashing lights.

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#)

Use iPhone more comfortably in a car

Get animated dots on the edges of the screen that may help reduce motion sickness.

[Use iPhone more comfortably while riding as a passenger in a vehicle](#)

[ALT N/A]

Use Dark Mode

If you prefer light text on a dark background, choose a dark color scheme for the iPhone user interface.

[Turn Dark Mode on or off](#)

[ALT N/A]

Adjust the display colors

Differentiate content on the screen more easily by inverting colors, applying a color filter, and more.

[Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#)

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

Related

[Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone](#)

[Get started with accessibility features on iPhone](#)

[Apple Accessibility Support website](#)

[Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for vision](#)

NAV TITLE: [Zoom in](#)

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, magnify the screen with full-screen zoom or window zoom.

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.

[Alt text: An iPhone showing the Home Screen with a window zoomed in on a part of the screen.]

Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Follow Focus:* Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.

   - *Smart Typing:* Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.

   - *Keyboard Shortcuts:* Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.

   - *Zoom Controller:* Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.

   - *Zoom Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.

   - *Zoom Filter:* Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.

   - *Maximum Zoom Level:* Drag the slider to adjust the level.

3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:

   - *Zoom Pan:* Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.

   - *Adjust Size with Zoom:* Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.

4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or use Accessibility Shortcut to turn on Zoom.

2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:

   - *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.

   - *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.

   - *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

   - *Choose Region:* Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.

   - *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.

   - *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.

   - *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

   - *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.

   - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.

   - *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See Pair Magic Keyboard with iPhone.

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or use Accessibility Shortcut.

Related

Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone
Use iPhone like a magnifying glass

View a larger version of text you're reading or typing on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With Hover Text on iPhone, move the pointer over text you're reading to display a larger version of it. Or display a larger, editable version of text as you type it.

With Hover Text on iPhone, you can move the pointer over text and other items on the screen (such as icons) to view a larger version of them. Or use Hover Typing to display a separate window with a larger version of text that you're typing.

Before you begin

To use Hover Text, you need to connect a pointing device such as a trackpad or mouse with your iPhone. See the Apple Support article How to use a pointer device with AssistiveTouch on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

You don't need to connect a pointing device to use Hover Typing.

Show a larger version of text when you hover over it

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Hover Text.

2. Move the pointer over text to display a larger version of it.

3. If you have a connected keyboard, you need to press and hold the Control key to show the Hover Text window.

If you use iPhone with a connected keyboard, you can have the Hover Text window automatically displayed when you move the pointer over text, without needing to press and hold a key every time. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Activation Lock. To use activation lock, quickly press the Control key three times.

You can change the key you press to activate Hover Text and activation lock. Tap Activation Modifier, then choose another key.

Show a larger version of text you're typing

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards & Typing, then tap Hover Typing.

2. Turn on Hover Typing.

3. As you type in a text entry field, a larger version of what you're typing is displayed.

To temporarily hide the Hover Typing window, swipe on it. It reappears when you start typing again.

Customize Hover Text or Hover Typing

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

2. Tap Hover Text, or tap Keyboards & Typing, then tap Hover Typing.

3. Customize any of the following:

   - *Display mode:* Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—inline (near the cursor), at the top of the screen, or directly above the onscreen keyboard.

   - *Appearance:* Choose the size, font, and color of the text in the Hover Text or Hover Typing window, or the colors of the window itself.

   - *Scrolling speed:* Choose a faster or slower speed (for scrolling in the Hover Text window when viewing large blocks of text).

Related

Zoom in on the iPhone screen
Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone
Use iPhone like a magnifying glass
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change display colors

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, invert display colors, make transparent items solid, and modify how colors appear with color filters.

To make it easier to see what's on your iPhone screen, you can invert display colors, make transparent items solid, and modify how colors appear with color filters.

Tip: Quickly set brightness with the slider in Control Center.

Invert colors

Make the background dark so text and content stand out. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support Dark Mode.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Turn on one of the following:

   - *Smart Invert:* Reverse colors everywhere except images.

   - *Classic Invert:* Reverse all the colors onscreen.

Differentiate or tone down colors

You can apply a filter to view the entire screen in grayscale, adjust colors for color vision deficiencies, or tint the screen a color of your choosing.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

   You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

   Note: Color filters can change the look of images and videos.

Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use Night Shift. Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

You can also use the Magnifier app to capture an image of nearby text or objects and apply a color filter to it. See Customize controls in Magnifier.

Make transparent items solid

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.

Differentiate without color

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

Use symbols for on/off switches

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use a vertical line to indicate when they're on and a circle to indicate when they're off.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Related

Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

Use iPhone like a magnifying glass

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Make text easier to read

Make text easier to read on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, make it easier to read text by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.

You can make it easier to read text on iPhone by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.
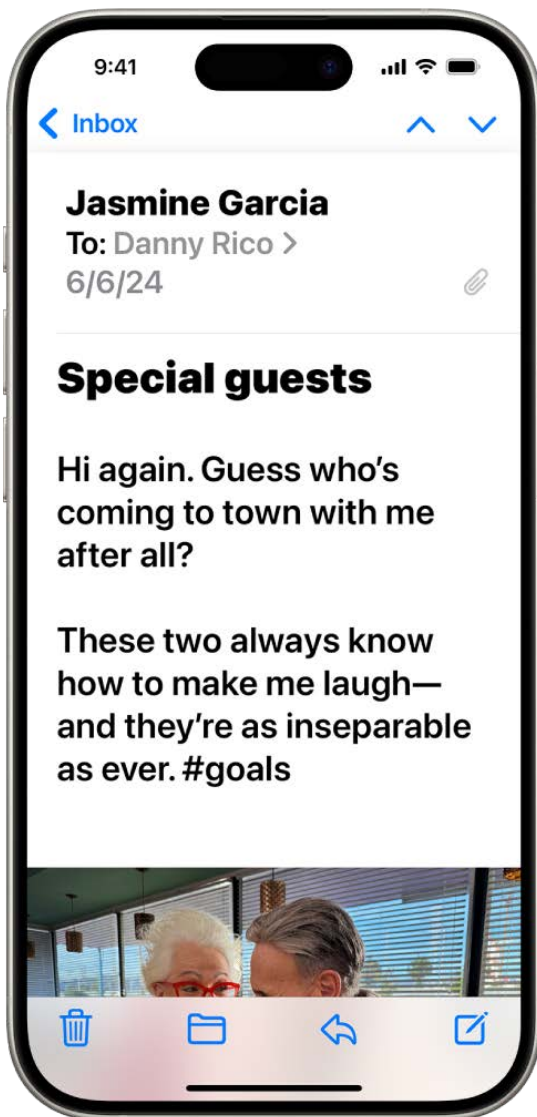
[Alt text: An iPhone with the Mail app open. An email is displayed with large, bold text.]

Make text bigger and bolder

You can set a single preferred text size for all supported apps (including Calendar, Mail, Messages, Notes, Settings, and more). You can also turn on bold text.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Do any of following:

   - *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size.

     For additional text sizes, turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes.

   - *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.

Tip: Change the size of text while you're in an app. Open Control Center, then adjust the Text Size slider AA [ALT N/A]. If you don't see the Text Size slider, tap ＋ [Alt text: the Add button] in the top-left corner, tap Add a Control, then tap the Text Size control.

You can also turn on Display Zoom to increase the size of text as well as interface elements like icons and buttons.

Identify tappable text

You can underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.

2. Turn on Button Shapes.

You can also change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen or zoom in on the screen.

Related

Use iPhone like a magnifying glass

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Reduce onscreen motion

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, transitions, animations, and more on iPhone.

If you don't want visual motion on your iPhone screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

• Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts

• Screen transitions

• Siri animations

• Typing autocompletion

• Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app

• Animated images on the web and in apps

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Motion.

2. These settings stop or reduce motion:

   • *Reduce Motion:* Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)

- *Auto-Play Message Effects:* Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)

- *Auto-Play Video Previews:* Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)

- *Auto-Play Animated Images:* Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)

- *Dim Flashing Lights:* Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)

- *Prefer Non-Blinking Cursor:* Turn on. (Stop the blinking of the vertical bar that appears at the insertion point where you're typing. If you use a braille display with iPhone, the cursor indicator on the display also stops blinking.)

- *Limit Frame Rate:* Turn on. (On models with ProMotion display technology, this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.

To apply these effects to specific apps, see Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps.

Important: Your iPhone uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported video content and automatically dims them on your iPhone in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

Related

Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

Turn off vibration on iPhone

Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

Metadata
Summary: You can get onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness while using iPhone in an on-road moving vehicle.

If you experience discomfort when you use iPhone while riding as a passenger in a car or other on-road vehicle, you can turn on Vehicle Motion Cues—onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness. Vehicle Motion Cues appear as animated dots on the edges of the screen that represent how the vehicle is moving without interfering with what you're doing on iPhone.

Note: Vehicle Motion Cues should not be used while operating a moving vehicle and in other situations requiring attention to safety. For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone. Vehicle Motion Cues work best when you're seated facing forward in the vehicle.

1. Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Motion.

2. Tap Show Vehicle Motion Cues, then tap an option. If you choose Automatic, animated dots appear on the screen when iPhone detects that you're riding in a car or other on-road vehicle; the dots are hidden when the motion stops.

3. To manually show or hide Vehicle Motion Cues, open Control Center, tap ⠿🚗 [Alt text: the Vehicle Motion Cues button] , then tap an option.

   Tip: You can also set up a shortcut to turn Vehicle Motion Cues on or off. See Quickly turn accessibility features on or off.

Related

Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen
Make text easier to read on iPhone
Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, choose different visual accessibility settings for individual apps and for the Home Screen and App Library.

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps or for the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.

2. Tap Add App, then choose an app from the list (or Home Screen & App Library).

3. Tap the name of the app (or Home Screen & App Library) to access its settings.

NAV TITLE: Hear what's on the screen or typed

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Metadata
Summary: Even if VoiceOver is turned off, iPhone can speak the entire screen, selected text, or what you type.

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone read text on the screen out loud. Have iPhone read the entire screen or a specific selection. Or hear what you type spoken out loud, character by character or word by word.

Have iPhone speak onscreen text

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Turn on any of the following:

   - *Speak Selection:* Have iPhone speak the text you select.

   - *Speak Screen:* Have iPhone read all text on the screen, starting from the top.

     Turn on Speech Controller to keep the Speak Screen controls on the screen.

     Turn on Highlight Content to have words or sentences highlighted as iPhone reads them out loud.

   - *Typing Feedback options:* As you type, have iPhone speak character by character, word by word, and more.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Hear selected text (if you turned on Speak Selection):* Select the text you want spoken, then tap Speak.

   - *Hear all text on the screen (if you turned on Speak Screen):* Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.

Use the controls that appear to pause speaking, adjust the rate, navigate forward or back to the content you want to hear, or use Speak on Touch (tap the text you want iPhone to read).

- *Hear what you type (if you turned on Typing Feedback options):* Start typing.

Siri: Say something like: "Speak screen." Learn how to use Siri.

Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Voices:* Choose a voice and dialect.

   - *Speaking Rate:* Drag the slider.

   - *Pronunciations:* Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

Related

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone
Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier on iPhone
Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: iPhone can play audio descriptions of scenes (if available) while you play a video.

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.

2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad.

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see Add descriptive audio tracks in the Compressor User Guide.

Related

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Adjust CarPlay accessibility settings for vision

Metadata
Summary: With CarPlay accessibility features for vision, you can make it easier to read text and differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen.

With CarPlay accessibility features for vision, you can make it easier to read text and differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen.

Note: CarPlay is not available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability page.

Make text bold

Turn on bold text to make it easier to read what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

2. Turn on Bold Text.

Filter display colors for color vision deficiencies

To make it easier to differentiate colors on the CarPlay touchscreen, you can apply filters for color vision deficiencies, or view the entire screen in grayscale.

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

2. Tap Color Filters, then turn on Color Filters.

3. Tap a filter. To change the intensity of the filter, tap Low, Medium, or High.

Related

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

VoiceOver

NAV TITLE: Turn on and practice VoiceOver

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: If you can't see the iPhone screen, turn on VoiceOver, a gesture-based screen reader.

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—for example, hear the battery level, who's calling, or what item your finger is on. You can also customize the VoiceOver speaking voice to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, use VoiceOver gestures.

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn VoiceOver on or off.

- Use Control Center if you've added VoiceOver there.

- Use the Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up to turn on VoiceOver.

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." Learn how to use Siri.

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

Use an interactive tutorial to learn VoiceOver

You can learn VoiceOver basics and practice essential gestures with the interactive VoiceOver Tutorial.

With VoiceOver turned on, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap VoiceOver Tutorial to get started.

Practice VoiceOver gestures

You can use the VoiceOver Practice area to safely try out VoiceOver gestures and hear what they do—without performing any action or otherwise affecting iPhone.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.

3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:

   • Tap

   • Double tap

   • Triple tap

   • Swipe left, right, up, or down

4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

Related

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone
Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier on iPhone
Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change your VoiceOver settings

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: Customize settings for VoiceOver on iPhone, such as audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds

- To increase or decrease your iPhone's volume, including the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds, as well as all other iPhone audio, press the volume buttons on iPhone.

- To temporarily reduce the volume of other iPhone audio while VoiceOver is speaking, go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then select When Speaking. Drag the Ducking Amount slider to set how much the volume decreases for other iPhone audio—like media and calls—when VoiceOver is speaking.

- To set other audio options, go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:

  - *Sounds & Haptics:* Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.

  - *Auto-select Speaker in Call:* Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.

  - *Send to HDMI:* Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.

Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language:* VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.

- *Switch languages using the rotor:* Use the rotor to switch to a voice for another language.

- *Automatically switch languages:* VoiceOver can detect text in another language and automatically switch to a voice for that language. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.

Note: VoiceOver is not available in all languages. See the Apple Support article Languages supported by VoiceOver.

Change the speaking voice

You can change the VoiceOver speaking voice, or add another voice and use the rotor to switch between voices as needed.

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Tap Speech, then do one of the following:

    - *Change the primary voice:* Tap the name of the current primary voice, then tap Voice.

    - *Add another voice:* Tap Add Rotor Voice.

3. Choose a voice. To choose an enhanced voice, tap ☁ [Alt text: the Download button] first.

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.

- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, tap a voice, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.

- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap ＋ [Alt text: the Add button] , enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

  Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity, then do any of the following:

- *Change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation:* Tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left brack."

- *Change how VoiceOver reads notifications:* Tap System Notifications. By default, VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages, as they occur—even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.

- *Choose additional options:* Have VoiceOver speak hints, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Then, when you open certain apps or adjust the rotor, the settings for speech, audio, verbosity, typing, navigation, and braille are applied automatically.

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.

2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.

3. Adjust the settings, then below Automatic Switching, do any of the following:

- *Apply the settings for certain apps:* Tap Apps, then select the ones you want this setting to apply to.

- *Apply the settings for certain contexts:* Tap Context, then select one or more contexts, such as Word Processing, Messaging, or Console.

Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.

- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

Set a delay between touching the screen and selecting an item

You can control the amount of time between when you touch the screen and when VoiceOver selects the item you've touched. Increasing this value may help reduce accidental touches.

Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, tap Delay before Selection, then tap ＋ [Alt text: the Increment button] or － [Alt text: the Decrement button] to increase or decrease the delay.

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.

- *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPhone

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.

2. Choose the settings you want, or drag ☰ [Alt text: the Reorder button] to reorder settings.

Related

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone
Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: With VoiceOver on iPhone, scan the screen with your finger and use gestures to perform actions or hear more information.

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

(table aria-label=VoiceOver gestures to speak items on the screen)

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see Use flat or grouped navigation.

Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

(table aria-label=VoiceOver gestures to scroll)

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

(table aria-label=VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item)

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold

Tip: As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

(table aria-label=Gestures to control VoiceOver)

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.

Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume.
	For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap.
	To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also use handwriting to select an item by writing its name. If you use Braille Screen Input to type braille directly on the screen, when you're not entering text, you can type to search for an item.
	To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.
Start or stop Live Recognition	Four-finger triple tap. See Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor.

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

(table aria-label=Gestures to use the VoiceOver rotor)

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

Related

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Metadata
Summary: With VoiceOver, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.

- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode or type onscreen braille.

Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:

    - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.

    - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.

2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.

3. Double-tap to open the app.

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.

2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.

- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.

2. Swipe down with three fingers.

Related

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone
Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Control VoiceOver using the rotor

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, use the rotor to change how VoiceOver works. Set the volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, and more.

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.

[Alt text: The rotor control with the dial pointing to the Speaking Rate setting.]

When you use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver, use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

   VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

   The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag ≡ [Alt text: the Reorder button] to reorder settings.

   - *Add another voice to the rotor:* See Change the speaking voice.

   - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

NAV TITLE: Use the onscreen keyboard

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: When using VoiceOver on iPhone, use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. Enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

    The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. To enter text, do one of the following:

    - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.

    - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.

    - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.

    - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.

- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

  VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

  When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use ⌫ [Alt text: the Delete key] .

- *Select text:* Do any of the following:

  - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)

  - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z") to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.

- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.

- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.

- *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Tap any of the following:

- *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.

- *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, "f" and then "foxtrot.

- *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.

- *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

Related

NAV TITLE: Write with your finger

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: When using handwriting mode in VoiceOver on iPhone, enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger.

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

   If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

   To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

   You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.

- *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.

- *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.

- *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.

2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.

2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

   If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).

2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

Related

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone
Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Keep the screen off when you use VoiceOver on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: If you don't need to see what's on the iPhone screen, you can turn on the VoiceOver screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy.

If you use VoiceOver on iPhone, and don't need to see what's on the screen, you can turn on the screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy. When the screen curtain is on, your iPhone is active even though the display is off.

With VoiceOver on, triple-tap with three fingers to turn the screen curtain on or off. If both VoiceOver and the Zoom feature are turned on, quadruple-tap with three fingers.

Related

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Operate iPhone when VoiceOver is on

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use VoiceOver with an external keyboard

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use VoiceOver with shortcuts on an Apple external keyboard. Choose the VoiceOver modifier and learn the keyboard shortcuts.

If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.

2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

   This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

(table aria-label=VoiceOver keyboard commands)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-Slash
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Fn-Hyphen (or VO-Globe key-Hyphen, depending on your keyboard)
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

(table aria-label=Quick Nav using the arrow keys)

Action	Shortcut

Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

(table aria-label=Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing)

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

(table aria-label=Keyboard shortcuts for text editing)

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

Related

[Use VoiceOver gestures on iPhone](#)
[Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device](#)
[Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone](#)
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: Use a braille display

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Connect a Bluetooth braille display and use it to control and navigate iPhone and read what's on the screen.

With VoiceOver, you can connect a Bluetooth® wireless refreshable braille display and use it to control and navigate iPhone and read what's on the screen. The braille you type on the display is automatically translated into text, and the display shows what you're typing in context. You can read and type using contracted or uncontracted braille, with support for many international braille tables.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.

2. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.

3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.

4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.

2. Set any of the following:

(table aria-label=Braille display settings)

Setting	Description
Match Input and Output Tables	Set the braille display to use the same table for both the input and the output.
Output	Choose the braille table you want to use to read braille output. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six-dot or eight-dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Input	Choose the braille table you want to use to type braille input. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six-dot or eight-dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver.
Braille Tables	Add tables to the braille table rotors.
Automatic Translation	Turn this option on to automatically translate the braille you type into text soon after you stop typing.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.

Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.
Sound Curtain	When a braille display is connected to iPhone, mute most sounds. Emergency alerts will still play sounds.
Enable Bluetooth on Start	Automatically turn on Bluetooth when you turn on VoiceOver so that braille displays can connect to iPhone.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.

2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

Use a 2D braille display

If you use a supported 2D braille display, you can use the rotor to switch between different output modes, such as the mode for displaying images or the mode for reading text on multiple lines.

1. Connect your braille display to iPhone.

2. With VoiceOver turned on, use the Braille Text Mode rotor to switch between output modes. See Control VoiceOver using the rotor.

Related

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver
Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen with VoiceOver

> Metadata
> Summary: Input braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

When you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to type braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard. You can also use Braille Screen Input to enter braille commands for navigating and controlling your iPhone.

Enter braille on the screen

1. With VoiceOver turned on, do one of the following to start Braille Screen Input:

   - *Use a gesture:* Place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. If the gesture doesn't work, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille. Tap Braille Screen Input, then turn on Use Activation Gestures.

   - *Use the rotor:* When you're in a text input area, set the rotor to Braille Screen Input. If Braille Screen Input isn't in the rotor, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Tap Rotor Items, then select Braille Screen Input.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:

   - *Tabletop mode:* Lay iPhone flat in front of you.

   - *Screen away mode:* Hold iPhone in landscape orientation with the screen facing away from you. Your fingers wrap around the sides of iPhone to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

   Tip: To hear where each dot is located, touch and hold, then drag your finger around the screen. To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

   You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

   (table aria-label=Gestures for Braille screen input)

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to *your* right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through modes (like Braille Entry Mode and Command Mode)	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (if you're typing contracted braille)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next braille table	Swipe up with two fingers

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, slide two fingers in opposite directions, or do a two-finger scrub (draw the letter "z" by quickly moving two fingers back and forth three times).

Tip: You can view and edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

Type on the screen to enter braille commands

With Braille Screen Input Command Mode, you can control iPhone by typing braille commands on the screen. You can use the same commands you use with a refreshable braille display.

1. With VoiceOver turned on, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap to start Braille Screen Input.

2. Switch to Command Mode by swiping left or right with three fingers.

3. Type braille commands directly on the screen.

   See the Apple Support article Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings ◉ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.

2. Set any of the following:

   - *Use Activation Gestures:* To start Braille Screen Input, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. If this option is off, use the rotor to start Braille Screen Input.

   - *Start Automatically when Editing:* Have Braille Screen Input start automatically when you enter a text input area.

   - *Keep Active until Dismissed:* After you launch an app or choose an item in Braille Entry Mode, automatically switch to Command Mode and keep it active.

   - *Reverse Dot Positions:* For six-dot braille, swap the positions of dots 1 and 3, and dots 4 and 6.

   - *Visual Text Feedback:* As you type in braille, display a text translation of what you're typing.

   - *Typing Feedback:* Get sound or haptic feedback as you enter text with Braille Screen Input.

   - *Mode announcements:* When you switch Braille Screen Input modes, have VoiceOver speak, play sounds, or both.

   - *Braille table:* Set the method for braille screen input.

Related

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone
Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.

2. Tap any of the following:

   - *All Commands:* Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.

   - *Touch Gestures:* List the gestures and the associated commands.

   - *Handwriting:* List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.

   - *Braille Screen Input:* List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

Related

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard
Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, adjust how a pointer device works with VoiceOver.

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:

- *Pointer:* Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.

- *Speak Under Pointer:* You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

Related

[Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone](#)
[Change display colors on iPhone to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#)
[Accessibility features for vision on iPhone](#)

Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use VoiceOver to get descriptions of your surroundings as well as images on the screen.

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use VoiceOver Recognition on iPhone to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the camera view. You can also get descriptions of onscreen images and user interface elements, even in apps and on webpages that don't provide accessibility information.

Important: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

1. With VoiceOver on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to start Live Recognition.

2. Choose the kinds of visual information you want VoiceOver to describe, like scenes, people, doors, furniture, or text. At the bottom of the screen, select a category, then double-tap to turn it on or off. If you turn on Point & Speak, you can point your finger at text and have VoiceOver read it aloud.

    Note: Detection of people, doors, and furniture is available only on [supported iPhone models](#).

3. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect what's around you. VoiceOver describes what it detects.

    To interrupt VoiceOver speech and move to the next detected item, tap the screen with two fingers.

4. To turn off Live Recognition, triple-tap the screen with four fingers. Or if the VoiceOver cursor is focused on an interface element for Live Recognition, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Tip: You can also set up a shortcut to quickly start and stop Live Recognition. See Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition.

You can also use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app to detect and describe scenes, people, and more. See Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier.

To change Live Recognition settings, go to the Magnifier app 🔍 [ALT N/A] , tap ⚙️ [Alt text: the Settings button] , then tap Detect. Tap Scenes, People, Doors, Furniture, Text, or Point & Speak.

Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of the people, objects, and text in images in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information. You can move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects, or navigate nutrition labels and receipts in the order items are listed.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.

2. To get descriptions of text found in images, turn on Text Recognition.

3. Go to an app such as Photos 🌸 [ALT N/A] or Safari 🧭 [ALT N/A] , then select an image.

4. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear Explore Image

5. Move your finger around the image to find out the position of each object.

You can add custom descriptions to your images with Markup.

Note: Image Descriptions are not available in all languages. See the iOS and iPadOS 18 Feature Availability webpage.

Get descriptions of user interface elements

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of user interface elements in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.

2. Turn on Screen Recognition.

Related

Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone
Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use VoiceOver in built-in iOS apps, such as Safari, Maps, Books, Files, Voice Memos, and more, even if you can't see the screen.

You can use VoiceOver in all the built-in apps that come with your iPhone—such as Safari, Maps, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements on webpages and in apps, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

Browse the web in Safari

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Safari app 🧭 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.

   - *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.

   - *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag ☰ [Alt text: the Reorder button] up or down to reposition an item.

   - *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.

   - *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

Tip: If you use Magic Keyboard with iPhone, you can use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing.

Navigate in Maps

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Maps app 🗺️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select ➤ [Alt text: the Tracking button] , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.

- *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.

- *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.

- *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.

- *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.

- *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.

- *Pan the map:* Select the map, then swipe with three fingers.

- *Browse locations and pins on the map:* Select the map, set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.

- *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.

- *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.

- *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPhone guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound and haptic feedback.

Read PDFs

In the Books and Files apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDFs. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

Make and receive phone calls

You can use VoiceOver to make and receive calls.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Phone app 📞 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Answer or end a call:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.

  When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.

- *Display call options:* Select the Hide button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.

- *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.

Take photos and videos

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Camera app 📷 [ALT N/A] on your iPhone. VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.

2. Select Camera Mode, then swipe up or down with one finger to switch between modes, like Photo or Video.

3. To take a photo or start or stop recording a video, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Trim voice memo recordings

You can use VoiceOver to edit recordings in the Voice Memos app.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Voice Memos 🎙️ [ALT N/A] app on your iPhone.

2. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.

3. Select ⋯ [Alt text: the More Actions button] , then double-tap.

4. Select Edit Recording, then double-tap.

5. Select ✂ [Alt text: the Trim button] , then double-tap.

6. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, double-tap and hold, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.

7. Select Trim, then double-tap.

8. Select Save, then double-tap.

9. Select Done, then double-tap.

Hear visual Weather data as sound

Some maps in the Weather app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Weather app 🌤️ [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.

3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words "Weather Map Snapshot." If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

   As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says "math" before it starts reading an equation.

- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. To drill down into the selected element, double-tap it, then swipe left or right to read one part of the element at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See Use a braille display with VoiceOver.

Related

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPhone

Accessibility features for vision on iPhone

Mobility

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Discover accessibility features for mobility that allow you to control iPhone with your voice, assistive devices, and more.

With built-in accessibility features for mobility, you can navigate and interact with iPhone using just your eyes, spoken commands, assistive devices, an external keyboard, and more. You can also set options so it's easier to use gestures and press iPhone buttons.

To explore accessibility features for mobility, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Physical and Motor section.

(table aria-label=Mobility-related accessibility features)

Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPhone hands-free	- Eye Tracking - Voice Control - Siri

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

Related

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Accessibility Support website

Apple Accessibility webpage for Mobility

NAV TITLE: Use AssistiveTouch

Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: With AssistiveTouch on iPhone, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs—if certain gestures don't work for you, replace them with a tap or other gesture, or use a

simple sound.

With AssistiveTouch on iPhone, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs. If certain gestures don't work for you, replace them with a tap or other gesture, or use a simple sound. You can also use AssistiveTouch when you need to press iPhone buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory or with a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick).
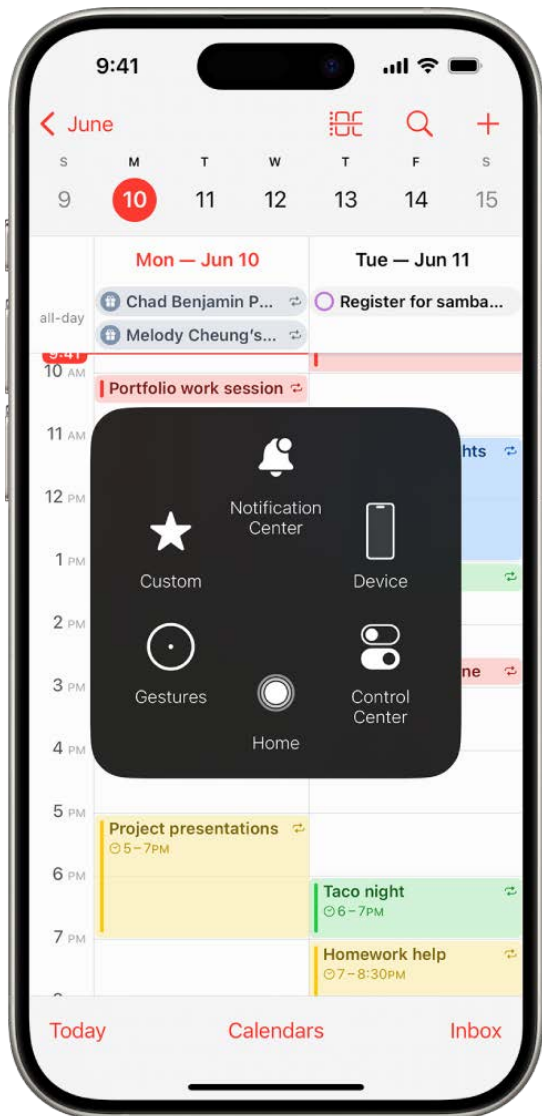
[Alt text: An iPhone with the AssistiveTouch menu visible, showing controls for Notification Center, Device, Control Center, Home, Gestures, and Custom.]

You can use AssistiveTouch to perform actions such as the following:

- Go to the Home Screen

- Double-tap

- Perform multifinger gestures

- Perform scroll gestures

- Activate Siri

- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher

- Adjust the volume on iPhone

- Shake iPhone

- Take a screenshot

- Use 3D Touch (on supported iPhone models)

- Use Apple Pay

- Use Emergency SOS

- Speak screen

- Adjust dwell settings

- Restart iPhone

Set up AssistiveTouch

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on AssistiveTouch" or "Turn off AssistiveTouch." Learn how to use Siri.

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.

2. Turn on AssistiveTouch. The AssistiveTouch menu button ◯ [ALT N/A] appears on the screen.

3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:

   - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap ➖ [Alt text: the Decrement button] or ➕ [Alt text: the Increment button] to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.

   - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on supported iPhone models.

   - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.

   - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.

   - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

Tip: To quickly turn AssistiveTouch on or off, you can set up the Accessibility Shortcut, then triple-click the side or Home button.

Use AssistiveTouch

When AssistiveTouch is on, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button ⬤ [ALT N/A] , then choose an action or gesture.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate:* Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

- *Multifinger swipe or drag:* Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

Control iPhone with a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, game controllers, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.

2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.

3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:

   - *Devices:* Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.

   - *Mouse Keys:* Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard.

   - *Pointer Style:* Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.

   - *Show Onscreen Keyboard:* Display the onscreen keyboard.

   - *Sound on Click:* Play a sound when the pointer device is clicked.

   - *Always Show Menu:* Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.

   - *Tracking Sensitivity:* Adjust how quickly the pointer moves when you drag the mouse or your finger on the trackpad.

You can also change the appearance of the pointer.

Set up Dwell Control

iPhone performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings ⊙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.

2. Adjust any of the following:

   - *Fallback Action:* Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.

   - *Movement Tolerance:* Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.

   - *Hot Corners:* Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.

   - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action:* Tap ⊟ [Alt text: the Decrement button] or ⊞ [Alt text: the Increment button] .

Use simple sounds to perform gestures

With AssistiveTouch, you can have iPhone perform a gesture or other action when you make a simple sound, such as a mouth pop or an S-sound.

1. Go to Settings ⊙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn AssistiveTouch on.

2. Tap Sound Actions, then tap a sound.

3. Select the gesture or other action you want performed when you make the sound.

4. To perform the gesture or action, just make the sound.

Create custom gestures

You can add gestures you use often (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings ⊙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.

2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:

   - *Touch-and-hold gesture:* Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.

   - *Two-finger rotation gesture:* Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

   If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.

4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button ◉ [ALT N/A] , tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

Related

Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch

> Metadata
> Summary: If you have difficulty performing tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures, change how the iPhone touchscreen responds.

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPhone touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPhone recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPhone from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPhone.

Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.

2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:

   - *Respond to longer or shorter touches:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap ⊟ [Alt text: the Decrement button] or ⊞ [Alt text: the Increment button] to adjust the duration.

   - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* If you turn on Hold Duration (above), you can increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins. Tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.

   - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap ⊟ [Alt text: the Decrement button] or ⊞ [Alt text: the Increment button] to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.

- *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

  If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example.

  If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap — [Alt text: the Decrement button] or + [Alt text: the Increment button] to adjust the timing. Your iPhone can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

You use the touch-and-hold gesture to see additional options or actions you can perform, or show a preview of content. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch, then tap Haptic Touch or 3D & Haptic Touch.

2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.

3. On an iPhone with 3D Touch, you can also choose the pressure needed—Light, Medium, or Firm.

4. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

Turn off Tap to Wake

On a supported iPhone model, you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPhone. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPhone, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch.

Tip: To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

Related

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone
Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts

Metadata
Summary: Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions or shortcuts.

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform actions such as taking a screenshot, turning on an accessibility feature, running a shortcut, and more.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.

2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.

3. To perform the action you set, double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone.

To turn off Back tap, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then tap None.

Related

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone
Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone
Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use Reachability

Reach the top of the iPhone screen with one hand

Metadata
Summary: Use Reachability to lower the top half of the iPhone screen and make it more easily accessible with one hand.

When you use iPhone with one hand in portrait orientation, you can use Reachability to lower the top half of the screen so it's within easy reach of your thumb.
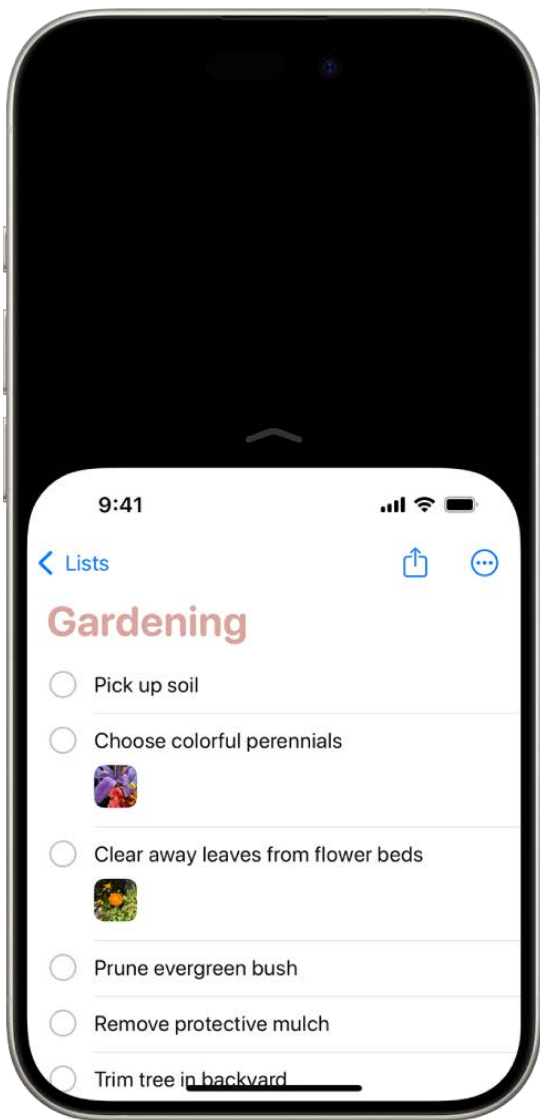
[Alt text: The iPhone screen with Reachability activated. The top of the screen has moved down so it's within easy reach of your thumb.]

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.

2. To lower the top half of the screen, do one the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.

3. To return to the full screen, tap the upper half of the screen.

Related

Use AssistiveTouch

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Auto-answer calls

Route and automatically answer calls on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Route the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls.

You can automatically direct the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to the iPhone speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPhone can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.

2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping ➖ [Alt text: the Decrement button] or ➕ [Alt text: the Increment button] .

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

Related

[Use hearing devices with iPhone](#)
[Announce calls and notifications for specific apps](#)
[End calls with Siri](#)
[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: Turn off vibration

Turn off vibration on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: If you don't want iPhone to vibrate, turn vibration off.

If you don't want your iPhone to vibrate, you can turn vibration off for specific uses or all alerts.

- *Set vibration options for specific alerts:* Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Sounds & Haptics. See [Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#).

- *Turn off all vibrations:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

  Note: This setting turns off vibrations for earthquake, tsunami, and other emergency alerts.

Related

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPhone](#)

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On an iPhone with Face ID, adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPhone.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Turn on or off any of the following:

   - Require Attention for Face ID

   - Attention Aware Features

   These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

Related

NAV TITLE: Use Voice Control

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Control iPhone with your voice. Speak commands to perform gestures, interact with screen elements, dictate and edit text, and more.

After you turn on Voice Control on your iPhone, you can speak commands to interact with what's on the screen, perform gestures and button presses, dictate and edit text, and more.

Note: When Voice Control is on, you use Voice Control to dictate text; standard iOS Dictation isn't available. If you just want to enter text using Dictation, without controlling your iPhone with your voice, see Dictate text. Voice Control isn't available in all languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability webpage.

Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPhone completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Voice Control.

2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

   When the download is complete, 🎙 [Alt text: the Voice Control icon] appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:

   - *Language:* Set the language and download languages for offline use.

   - *Customize Commands:* View the available commands and create new commands.

   - *Vocabulary:* Teach Voice Control to recognize new words and phrases. You can enter a word or phrase and teach Voice Control how you pronounce it, or import a vocabulary list.

     Note: Not all Voice Control languages support a custom vocabulary.

   - *Show Confirmation:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.

- *Play Sound:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.

- *Show Hints:* See command suggestions and hints.

- *Overlay:* Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.

- *Attention Aware:* On an iPhone with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.

Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use Control Center if you've added Voice Control there.

- Use Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up to turn on Voice Control.

Siri: Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off Voice Control." Learn how to use Siri.

Start using commands

To use Voice Control on your iPhone, just say a command.

[ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say, for example, "Open Control Center," "Go home," "Tap *item name*," or "Turn up volume."

Tip: Use the interactive Voice Control Tutorial to get familiar with Voice Control and practice essential commands. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Voice Control, then tap Open Voice Control Tutorial.

Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands or dictation. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands and dictation again.

[ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Stop listening" or "Start listening."

See what commands you can use

Display a list of the available commands, which vary depending on the app you're working in and what you're doing. For example, you see text formatting commands while writing a document.

[ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Show commands."

To browse the full list of supported commands and see examples of how to use them, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Voice Control > Commands.

Label onscreen items

When you're not sure what to call something, you can display a name or number next to each item on the screen. You can then use the item's name or number to interact with it.

🔵 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Show names" or "Show numbers."

To interact with an item, say its name or number, or say a command—such as "Long press"—followed by the item's name or number. The item names or numbers disappear after you say the command.

Show a numbered grid on the screen

You can make it easier to interact with a precise area of the screen by superimposing a grid.

🔵 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Show grid."

- *Interact with a location on the grid:* If a number is at the location you want to interact with, say any command—such as "Tap"—followed by the grid number. The grid disappears after you say the command.

- *Drill down on an area of the grid:* If you need to further refine the location, say a grid number to show a more detailed grid in that area.

Say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid" to turn the overlay off.

Enter text

When working in a text input area, you can dictate word by word (with Dictation mode) or character by character (with Spelling mode). To avoid mistakenly entering a Voice Control command as text, have Voice Control respond only to commands (with Command mode).

When you're in a text input area and label onscreen items with numbers, numbers are shown next to each line of text. Select a line or another section of the text to display a number for each word in the selection; select a single word to show a number for each character in the word. To interact with a text item (such as a line or a word), say a command followed by the item's name or number. For example, you can say "Delete [*item number*]" or "Uppercase [*item number*]."

(table aria-label=Voice Control commands for entering text)

Command	Description
🔵 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Dictation mode."	Dictate word by word.
	Any words you say that aren't Voice Control commands are entered as text. Dictation mode is on by default.
	In some Voice Control languages, if several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you want.
🔵 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Spelling mode."	Dictate character by character.
	Spelling mode is helpful when you need to enter a password, a web address, or another sequence of characters that wouldn't be recognized as a word in Dictation mode.

	When Spelling mode is on, ABC [Alt text: the Spelling Mode icon] appears in the text input area.
	To increase accuracy when entering letters, you can use the letter's phonetic alphabet code word (for example, say "Alfa Bravo Charlie" to enter "abc").
	Note: Spelling mode isn't available in all Voice Control languages.
[ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Command mode."	Voice Control responds only to commands.
	Words and characters that aren't commands are ignored and aren't entered as text. Command mode is helpful when you need to say a series of commands and don't want them inadvertently entered in a text input area.
	When Command mode is on, [X] [Alt text: the Command Mode icon] appears in the text input area to indicate you can't dictate to enter text.

Related

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

Use Voice Control commands to interact with CarPlay

> Metadata
> Summary: With Voice Control, you can use your voice to navigate CarPlay and apps, and interact with what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

With Voice Control, you can use your voice to navigate CarPlay and apps, and interact with what's on the CarPlay touchscreen.

Note: Voice Control is available only in [supported languages](#). CarPlay is available only in [supported countries and regions](#).

Turn Voice Control on or off

1. In CarPlay, go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility.

2. Turn Voice Control on or off.

   When you turn on Voice Control, 🎙️ [Alt text: the Voice Control icon] appears in the sidebar to indicate that Voice Control is listening for commands.

Start using commands

To use Voice Control in CarPlay, just say a command.

🎙️ [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say, for example, "Open Maps," "Pan left," or "Go back."

When you say multiple commands in quick succession, pause about half a second between commands.

Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands again.

🔵 [ALT N/A] **Voice Control:** Say "Stop listening" or "Start listening."

Commands for navigation and interaction

(table aria-label=Commands for navigation and interaction)

Command	Description
"Open [*app*]"	Open an app.
"Go Home"	Return to the Home Screen.
"Go back"	Return to the previous screen (in apps with a Back button).
"Tap [*item*]"	Tap an item on the touchscreen.
	In some apps, if you're not sure what to call an unlabeled item, you can refer to it based on its position relative to other items. For example, if you see a row of icons with no text labels, you can try saying "Tap first" or "Tap second" to tap the first or second icon in the row, respectively.
"Single tap"	Tap the touchscreen.
	This can be useful in an app like Maps where some items are hidden after a period of inactivity. Tapping the screen causes hidden items to reappear.
"Double-tap"	Double-tap the touchscreen.
	This can be used in an app like Maps to zoom in on the map.
"Double-tap [*item*]"	Double-tap an item on the touchscreen.
"Swipe left" or "Swipe right"	Swipe between pages in CarPlay Home or CarPlay Dashboard.
"Swipe up" or "Swipe down"	Navigate up or down in a list.
"Pan left," "Pan right," "Pan up," or "Pan down"	In an app like Maps, move around the map.
"Open Siri"	Activate Siri (instead of pressing the voice command button on the steering wheel).

Use Voice Control in Maps

If you use Voice Control in the Maps app in CarPlay and don't know what to call a button, you can use the button names in the table below.

If a button has a text label, use the text shown as the name of the button. For example, to tap a button labeled Go, just say "Tap Go."

(table aria-label=Button names in Maps in CarPlay)

Button	Name

[Alt text: The Zoom In button.]	Zoom In
[Alt text: The Zoom Out button.]	Zoom Out
[Alt text: The Pan button.]	Pan
[Alt text: The Tracking button.]	Tracking This button may appear as [Alt text: The Tracking button.] , [Alt text: The Tracking Off button] , or [Alt text: The Tracking On Heading button] , depending on the current setting.
[Alt text: The Overview button.]	Overview *or* Route Overview
[Alt text: The Expand button.]	Expand *or* Up
[Alt text: The Collapse button.]	Collapse *or* Down
[Alt text: The Close button.]	Close *or* Dismiss
[Alt text: The Report button.]	Report
[Alt text: The Speaker button.]	All Guidance *or* Speaker
[Alt text: The Alerts Only button.]	Alerts Only
[Alt text: The Mute button.]	No Guidance *or* Mute
[Alt text: The Siri button.]	Siri *or* Dictation

Button	Name
[Alt text: The Keyboard button.]	Keyboard

To learn more about using the Maps app in CarPlay, see
Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay, Change the map view, and Report traffic incidents.

Use Voice Control in Music

If you use Voice Control in the Music app in CarPlay and don't know what to call a button, you can use the button names in the table below.

If a button has a text label, use the text shown as the name of the button. For example, to tap a button labeled Cancel, just say "Tap Cancel."

(table aria-label=Button names in Music in CarPlay)

Button	Name
[Alt text: The Play button.]	Play
[Alt text: The Pause button.]	Pause
[Alt text: The Fast Forward button.]	Fast Forward
[Alt text: The Rewind button.]	Rewind
[Alt text: The Shuffle button.]	Shuffle
[Alt text: The Repeat button.]	Repeat
[Alt text: The Autoplay button.]	Autoplay
[Alt text: The Favorite button.]	Favorite
[Alt text: The More button.]	More

	Go back
◄	
[Alt text: The Go Back button.]	

	List
☰	
[Alt text: The List button.]	

Related

[Change settings in CarPlay](#)

[Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, adjust accessibility settings for the side or Home button.

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on other iPhone models).

2. Set any of the following:

   - *Click Speed:* Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.

   - *Press and Hold to Speak:* Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.

   - *Rest Finger to Open:* On an [iPhone with Touch ID](#), you can unlock and open iPhone by resting your finger on Touch ID.

On an [iPhone with Face ID](#), you can also [use AssistiveTouch](#) or [use Switch Control](#) to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the side button.

Related

[Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone](#)

[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

Adjust accessibility settings for the Camera Control on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, change the pressure or speed required to lightly press the Camera Control, disable the light press gesture, or disable the Camera Control entirely.

On all iPhone 16 models, you can change the pressure required to lightly press the Camera Control or the speed required to lightly double-press it. You can also change the gesture you use to access controls like Zoom or Depth, disable that gesture, or disable the Camera Control entirely.

1. Go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Camera Control.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Disable the Camera Control entirely:* Turn off Camera Control.

   - *Use a light press gesture to access controls:* Turn Light-Press on. Turn it off to disable the gesture.

   - *Use a swipe gesture to access controls:* Turn on Swipe. Turn it off to disable the gesture.

   - *Adjust the pressure required to lightly press the Camera Control:* Choose a firmness option below Light-Press Force. You can practice the gesture to try out the pressure you set.

   - *Adjust the speed required to lightly double-press the Camera Control:* Below Double Light-Press Speed, choose how fast you need to press for iPhone to recognize a light double press.

You can also customize the Camera Control to open the Magnifier app. See Use the Camera Control to open another app.

Related

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPhone
Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone
Adjust how iPhone responds to your touch
Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

Related

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Adjust pointer settings

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, customize the color, shape, size, and scrolling speed of the pointer.

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you use a mouse or trackpad with iPhone, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast

- Automatically Hide Pointer

- Color

- Pointer Size

- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

Related

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, set the onscreen keyboard to show only uppercase letters, adjust key sensitivity, and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

You can set the onscreen keyboard on iPhone to show only uppercase letters, and if you use a physical keyboard with your iPhone, adjust key sensitivity and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

You can also set typing options, such as auto-correction and slide to type, make it easier to type with one hand, and add keyboards for other languages or alternative layouts.

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If it's easier to read uppercase letters, you can set an option so the onscreen keyboard doesn't display lowercase letters.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

Tip: Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Messages, Notes, and Safari. See Change or lock the screen orientation.

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you use Magic Keyboard or another physical keyboard with iPhone, you can adjust the sensitivity of keys and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat:* You can set how long you must press and hold a key before it starts repeating and how fast it repeats once it starts. You can also prevent the key from repeating at all.

- *Sticky Keys:* When you need to press multiple keys at the same time, you can press each key separately instead. For example, enter the keyboard shortcut Command-Z by pressing Command, then pressing Z.

- *Slow Keys:* Adjust the time between when you press a key and when it's activated.

Related

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone
Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone
Control iPhone with an external keyboard

Control iPhone with an external keyboard

> Metadata
> Summary: If you use a physical keyboard with iPhone, you can use Full Keyboard Access to control your device with the keyboard instead of the touchscreen.

If you use Magic Keyboard or another physical keyboard with iPhone, you can use Full Keyboard Access to control your device with keyboard shortcuts instead of the touchscreen. Full Keyboard Access highlights the item on the screen that has focus.

Control iPhone using Full Keyboard Access

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.

2. Navigate iPhone using the following default commands.

   (table aria-label=Keyboard shortcuts for full keyboard access)

Action	Shortcut
View available Full Keyboard Access commands	Tab-H
Move forward	Tab
Move backward	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Fn-H
Open the App Switcher	Fn-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Fn-C
Open Notification Center	Fn-N

Customize Full Keyboard Access

You can change the keyboard shortcuts associated with Full Keyboard Access commands, and customize the appearance of Full Keyboard Access (such as the color, contrast, and size of the highlight).

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap Full Keyboard Access.

2. Do any of the following:

- *View a complete list of Full Keyboard Access commands and customize them:* Tap Commands.

- *Change the look of Full Keyboard Access:* Tap an option below Appearance.

Related

NAV TITLE: Adjust AirPods settings

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, change the accessibility settings for your AirPods 3 or later, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max to suit your mobility or hearing needs. For example, adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.

With AirPods 3 or later, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your mobility or hearing needs.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > AirPods.

2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.

3. Set any of the following options:

   - *Press Speed:* Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.

   - *Press and Hold Duration:* Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.

   - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod:* With AirPods Pro, turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.

   - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking:* When you turn on Follow iPhone, Spatial Audio sounds like it's coming from your iPhone instead of following the movement of your head (for supported audio and video content).

   - *Tone Volume:* Adjust the volume of the sound effects that are played by your AirPods, such as low battery alerts.

If you have AirPods Pro 2, you can use your iPhone to take a hearing test. If you have perceived mild to moderate hearing loss, you can get hearing assistance with the Hearing Aid feature. See Use hearing health features with AirPods Pro 2.

Related

Adjust audio settings on iPhone

Use AirPods with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from a paired iPhone.

Apple Watch Mirroring allows you to see and control your Apple Watch screen from your paired iPhone. You can use touch or assistive features like Voice Control, Switch Control, and more on your iPhone to interact with Apple Watch. (Apple Watch Mirroring is available on Apple Watch Series 6 and later.)

To turn on Apple Watch Mirroring, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Apple Watch Mirroring.

- You can triple-click a button if you set up Accessibility Shortcut.

To turn off Apple Watch Mirroring, tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] .

Related

Use Apple Watch with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: Control another Apple device with your iPhone.

You can remotely control your other Apple devices with your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Control Nearby Devices, then tap Control Nearby Devices.

   The device you want to control must be signed in to the same Apple Account and connected to the same Wi-Fi network as your iPhone.

2. Choose the device you want to control, then tap a button.

   Button names correspond to the controls on your device. Tap ⋯ [Alt text: the More button] to see your options, including media play controls.

Tip: To quickly turn on Control Nearby Devices, add this feature to Accessibility Shortcut.

To stop controlling the other device, tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] .

Related

Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Control iPhone with the movement of your eyes

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, you can use Eye Tracking to control your device with the movement of your eyes.

With Eye Tracking, you can control iPhone using just your eyes. An onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes, and when you look at an item and hold your gaze steady, or *dwell*, you perform an action, such as a tap. All data used to set up and control Eye Tracking is processed on device.

Before you begin

Eye Tracking uses the built-in, front-facing camera on iPhone. For best results, make sure that the camera has a clear view of your face and that your face is adequately lit. iPhone should be on a stable surface about a foot and a half away from your face.

Eye Tracking is available with supported iPhone models.

Turn on Eye Tracking

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then turn on Eye Tracking.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

   Note: You need to calibrate Eye Tracking every time you turn it on.

Use Eye Tracking

After you turn on and calibrate Eye Tracking, an onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes. When you're looking at an item on the screen, an outline appears around the item.

When you hold your gaze steady at a location on the screen, the dwell pointer ⚪ [ALT N/A] appears where you're looking and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, an action—tap, by default—is performed.

To perform additional onscreen gestures or physical button presses, use the AssistiveTouch menu ⚫ [ALT N/A] . See Use AssistiveTouch.

Recalibrate Eye Tracking

If you change the position of your face or your iPhone, Eye Tracking calibration automatically starts if recalibration is needed. You can also manually start Eye Tracking calibration.

1. Look at the top-left corner of your screen and hold your gaze steady.

   The dwell pointer ⚪ [ALT N/A] appears and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, Eye Tracking calibration starts.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

You can change which corner of the screen you need to look at to start recalibration or assign actions to other corners. See Set up Dwell Control.

Set options for Eye Tracking

You can set options for how the Eye Tracking pointer responds to your gaze.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then adjust any of the following:

   - *Smoothing:* Increase this value to make the movement of the pointer smoother. Or decrease this value to make the pointer more responsive.

   - *Snap to Item:* Have the Eye Tracking pointer automatically move to the item on the screen that's closest to where you're looking.

   - *Zoom on Keyboard Keys:* When you dwell on the keyboard, zoom in on the section of the keyboard you're looking at. Dwell again on a key to tap it.

   - *Auto-Hide:* Show the Eye Tracking pointer when you hold your gaze steady for the amount of time specified. The pointer automatically fades while your eyes are moving.

- *Dwell Control:* Turn Dwell Control on or off. To adjust settings for Dwell Control, such as the default dwell action and the duration of the dwell timer, see Set up Dwell Control.

To change the size or color of the Eye Tracking pointer, go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control. See Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone.

Related

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Switch Control

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: If you have motor limitations, use Switch Control to control iPhone using one or more switches.

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPhone by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPhone screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPhone.

Switches on iPhone don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- *Screen:* Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPhone screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.

- *Camera:* While in view of the front-facing iPhone camera, move your head to the left or right, or pinch your left or right index finger and thumb. You can set up each gesture as a different switch with a separate action.

- *Back Tap:* Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.

- *Sound:* Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.

- *AirPods:* Nod or shake your head while wearing supported AirPods that are paired with your iPhone. You can set up nod and shake as two different switches with separate actions.

- *Gaming:* Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPhone.

External switches connect to iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory

- Joystick

- Game controller

- MFi switch or switch interface

How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch's action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

Related

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone
Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Set up and turn on Switch Control

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: If you have severe motor limitations, use Switch Control to control iPhone using one or more switches.

To set up Switch Control, you need to connect and add one or more switches, then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.

Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or MFi device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPhone by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPhone.

1. Turn on the switch.

2. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Step 2: Add switches and assign actions

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.

2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, or Sound.

   If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPhone as described above in
   Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional).

3. Assign an action to the switch.

   The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in Step 3: Choose a scanning style, below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

   Tip: Turn your iPhone into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPhone with. Or you may decide to reuse your Back Tap gestures instead.

Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Auto Scanning:* The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.

  If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

  Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

  This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPhone speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings ⚙️ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.

- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.

- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.

- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.

- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.

- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.

- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.

- *Hold Duration:* Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.

- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.

- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.

- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.

- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.

- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.

- *Large Cursor:* Make the highlight more prominent.

- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different highlight color.

Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

Important: When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

Tip: You can add Switch Control to Accessibility Shortcut, then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or the Home button (on other iPhone models).

Related

Intro to Switch Control on iPhone

Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Select items, perform actions, and more

Use Switch Control on iPhone to select items, perform actions, and more

> Metadata
> Summary: With Switch Control on iPhone, use item scanning, gliding cursor (point scanning), or head tracking to select an item on the screen.

After you set up and turn on Switch Control, you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode:* The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.

- *Gliding cursor:* You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

- *Head tracking:* You can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the scanning style you're using, do one of the following:

   - *If using Auto Scanning:* Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.

   - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.

   - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.

2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:

   - *If using Auto Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.

   - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.

   - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Wait until the current group is automatically selected.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.

4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

Use the gliding cursor to select a point

By default, Switch Control starts in item mode. To use the gliding cursor instead, do the following:

1. Use item mode to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).

2. To position the vertical crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.

3. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.

4. To position the horizontal crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide horizontal band is over the item you want.

5. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine horizontal line is over the item.

6. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Set up head tracking

You can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up head tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've [set up switches](#).

- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:

    - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.

    - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.

    - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap ⎯ [Alt text: the Decrement button] or ＋ [Alt text: the Increment button] .

Use head tracking

To use head tracking, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).

2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.

3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Related

[Intro to Switch Control on iPhone](#)
[Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone](#)
[Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone](#)

NAV TITLE: Control several devices with one switch

Control several devices with one switch on iPhone

> Metadata
> Summary: On iPhone, use Platform Switching to control multiple devices using a single switch.

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPhone.

1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

2. Sign in with the same Apple Account on all your devices.

3. Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPhone, then turn on Switch Control for the others: iPad, Mac, or Apple TV.

4. Use the switch to open the Scanner menu.

5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.

To remove control from your iPhone, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.

Related

Control a nearby Apple device with iPhone

Interact with Apple Watch on your iPhone

Control your home remotely with iPhone

Accessibility features for mobility on iPhone

Hearing

NAV TITLE: Overview of accessibility features for hearing

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Discover accessibility features on iPhone to help you hear better or stay connected without hearing a sound.

iPhone comes with built-in tools designed to help you hear better—or stay connected without hearing a sound.

To explore accessibility features for hearing, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Hearing section.

Use alternatives to sound

(table aria-label=Use alternatives to sound)

[ALT N/A]

Get real-time captions of spoken audio

With Live Captions, get a transcription of the audio from any app and from live conversations around you.

Get live captions of spoken audio

[ALT N/A]

Customize subtitles and captions

Change how subtitles look. Or instead of standard subtitles, use closed captions and SDH when available.

Display subtitles and captions

[ALT N/A]

Blink the iPhone light for notifications

If you can't hear your alerts, get notified visually.

Flash the iPhone indicator light for notifications

[ALT N/A]

Get notified about sounds around you

With Sound Recognition, have iPhone listen for sounds—such as a doorbell or siren—and alert you when it recognizes them.

Recognize sounds

[ALT N/A]

Feel the music

Experience music as taps, textures, and refined vibrations that are synchronized with a song's audio.

Play music as vibrations and other haptics

[ALT N/A]

Type to Siri

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

Change Siri accessibility settings

[ALT N/A]

Make Real-Time Text (RTT) calls

Type to communicate on a phone call. The person you're talking to sees your message as you type it.

Set up and use RTT and TTY

You can also get transcriptions of audio messages, HomePod intercom messages, and podcasts.

Use hearing devices and make audio adjustments

(table aria-label=Use hearing devices and make audio adjustments)

[ALT N/A]

Hearing devices

Pair Made for iPhone (MFi) hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

Use hearing devices

[ALT N/A]

Live Listen

Stream sound from the iPhone microphone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods.

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

[ALT N/A]

[ALT N/A]

Audio balance

Play stereo audio as mono, adjust left-right stereo balance, and more.

Adjust audio settings

AirPods

Set accessibility options for AirPods and other Apple headphones paired with your iPhone.

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods

[ALT N/A]

Background sounds

Have your iPhone play ambient sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest.

Play background sounds

You can also have Siri announce notifications and calls on your MFi hearing devices.

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut.

Related

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

Apple Accessibility Support website

Apple Accessibility webpage for Hearing

NAV TITLE: Use hearing devices

Use hearing devices with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

You can use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings. For a list of models that work well with iPhone, see the Apple Support article Made for iPhone compatible hearing devices.

If you have AirPods Pro 2, you can use your iPhone to take a hearing test. If you have perceived mild to moderate hearing loss, you can get hearing assistance with the Hearing Aid feature. See Use hearing health features with AirPods Pro 2.

Pair hearing devices with iPhone

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings 🔘 [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

If your hearing devices are already paired to another nearby device, such as a Mac or iPad, make sure Bluetooth® is turned off on those devices. (When you finish pairing your hearing devices to your iPhone, you can turn Bluetooth on again on those devices.)

1. On iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.

3. Turn your hearing devices off and back on again.

   If you're unsure how to turn them off, refer to the instructions that came with them, or check with the audiologist who helped you set them up.

4. When their name appears below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the name and respond to the pairing requests.

   Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.

- *By triple-clicking the side or Home button:* Use the Accessibility Shortcut if you've set it up.

- *In Control Center:* Tap 🦻 [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button] . (If you don't see 🦻 [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button] , add it to Control Center.)

- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:

  - Check battery status.

  - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.

  - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.

  - Control Live Listen.

  - Choose whether phone and media audio are routed to the hearing device.

  - Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.

Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

1. Sign in to your Apple Account on all the devices.

2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.

2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article About Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) requirements for iPhone.

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from phone calls, music, movies, podcasts, Siri, and more.

1. Tap ◉ [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to.

2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically route audio calls to a hearing device.

To troubleshoot issues you have using your hearing devices with iPhone, see the Apple Support article Use Made for iPhone hearing devices.

Related

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen
Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, stream sound from the microphone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods.

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

   If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPhone, tap ⊚ [Alt text: the Playback Destination button] in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.

2. To turn Live Listen on or off, do one of the following:

   - Open Control Center, tap ⓟ [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button] , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

     (If you don't see ⓟ [Alt text: the Hearing Devices button] , add it to Control Center—go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Control Center, then tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Insert button] next to Hearing.)

   - If you've set up the Accessibility Shortcut, triple-click the side or Home button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.

   - If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings ⊚ [ALT N/A] > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.

3. Position iPhone near the sound source.

Related

Accessibility features for hearing on iPhone

AirPods User Guide: Use Live Listen with AirPods

Recognize sounds using iPhone

Metadata
Summary: iPhone can listen for certain sounds and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.